# **PTP 59600 reference information**

This section contains reference information that is specific to the PTP 59600 frequency variant.

# PTP 59600 examples of regulatory limits

Table 4-57 shows how the regulatory limits currently apply in specific countries. Operators should note that regulations are subject to change.

| Region | Examples of Regulatory Limits at 5.9 GHz   |
|--------|--|
| Russia | Operation of this product is only allowed with a License Key for Region 16 (no power limit)  |
| India  | Operation of this product is only allowed with a License Key for Regions 17 or 19 (36 dBm or 4W EIRP at 30 MHz, 15 MHz and 10 MHz; and 33 dBm or 2 W EIRP at 5 MHz channel bandwidth). |

 Table 4-57
 PTP 59600 examples of regulatory limits

### PTP 59600 licenses and region codes

PTP 59600 units may be operated in any of the regions listed in Table 4-58. When shipped, PTP 59600 units are configured with a license key for region code 16. An alternative license key is provided in the *PTP 600 Installation Guide* for region code 17. For any other permitted region, obtain a new license key from the reseller or distributor.

| Region<br>code | License /<br>Regulation | Frequencies        | DFS | Channel<br>Bandwidth | Max Power      |
|----------------|-------------------------|--------------------|-----|----------------------|----------------|
| 15             | Unrestricted            | 5825 - 5925<br>MHz |     | 5, 10, 15, 30<br>MHz | 25 dBm         |
| 16             | Russia                  | 5825 - 5925<br>MHz |     | 5, 10, 15, 30<br>MHz | 25 dBm         |
| 17             | India                   | 5875 - 5925<br>MHz |     | 10, 15, 30<br>MHz    | 36 dBm<br>EIRP |
|                |                         |                    |     | 5 MHz                | 33 dBm<br>EIRP |
| 19             | India                   | 5825 - 5875<br>MHz |     | 10, 15, 30<br>MHz    | 36 dBm<br>EIRP |
|                |                         |                    |     | 5 MHz                | 33 dBm<br>EIRP |

| Table 4-58 | PTP 59600  | licenses and | region  | codes |
|------------|------------|--------------|---------|-------|
| rabie roo  | 1 11 00000 | moonooo ama  | 1091011 | 00000 |

# 

The 5.8 GHz license for India is addressed using both PTP 58600 and PTP 59600 frequency variants.

# PTP 59600 regulatory compliance

#### Russia

This system has been tested for type approval in Russia of fixed link equipment under the heading of BPD TZS 12.

| Сертификат соответствия | Срок действия        |
|-------------------------|----------------------|
| ОС-1-РД-0241            | с 28 октября 2008 г. |

## PTP 59600 radio system specifications

Table 4-59 contains radio system specifications for the PTP 59600.

| Radio Technology          | Specification  |
|---------------------------|--|
| RF Band                   | 5.825-5.925GHz   |
| Channel Selection         | By dynamic frequency control and manual intervention<br>Automatic detection on start-up and continual adaptation<br>to avoid interference. |
| Dynamic Frequency Control | Initial capture 10-15 sec. Out of service on interference 100 ms.  |
| Channel size              | 5, 10, 15 and 30 MHz   |
| Manual Power Control      | Maximum power can be controlled lower than the power<br>limits shown above in order to control interference to<br>other users of the band. |
| Receiver Noise Figure     | Typically 6 dB   |
| Antenna Type              | Integrated flat plate antenna  |
| Antenna Gain              | 23 dBi typical   |
| Antenna Beamwidth         | 8 Degrees  |

**Table 4-59**PTP 59600 RF specifications

| Radio Technology                 | Specification   |
|----------------------------------|---|
| Max Path Loss (5 MHz<br>Channel) | 166 dB  |
| Duplex Scheme                    | Symmetric fixed, asymmetric fixed or adaptive TDD   |
| Range                            | 125 miles (200km) optical line-of-sight<br>6 miles (10km) non-line-of-sight   |
| Over-the-Air Encryption          | Proprietary scrambling mechanism.   |
| Weather Sensitivity              | Sensitivity at higher modes may be reduced during high<br>winds through trees due to Adaptive Modulation<br>Threshold changes |
| Error Correction                 | FEC   |

## PTP 59600 available spectrum settings

The available spectrum settings for the PTP 59600 are illustrated in this section.

Adjustment of the lower centre frequency allows the operator to slide the available frequency settings up and down the 5.9 GHz band in steps of 2 MHz.

In the 30 MHz channel bandwidth (Figure 4-26) the PTP 59600 variant operates on a 10 MHz channel raster. In the 15 MHz (Figure 4-27), 10 MHz (Figure 4-28) and 5 MHz (Figure 4-29) channel bandwidths, the PTP 59600 variant operates on a 6 MHz channel raster. The channel raster is set to even centre frequencies.

# 

These tables contain data for one typical region code. The specified channel centre frequencies may not be available in other region codes.

The PTP 59600 product variant does not apply any band edge power reduction.



#### Figure 4-26 PTP 59600 available spectrum in 30 MHz channel bandwidth



#### Figure 4-27 PTP 59600 available spectrum in 15 MHz channel bandwidth



#### Figure 4-28 PTP 59600 available spectrum in 10 MHz channel bandwidth

Figure 4-29 PTP 59600 available spectrum in 5 MHz channel bandwidth



## PTP 59600 system threshold, output power and link loss

PTP 59600 system threshold figures are given in Table 4-60 (IP mode) and Table 4-61 (TDM mode). These figures assume that antenna gain is 23 dBi.

|  | Thresh   | ıold Valu | ıe (dBm)  |               | Output<br>Power<br>(dBm) | Maxim    | um Linl   | k Loss (d | 1B)       |
|--|----------|-----------|-----------|---------------|--------------------------|----------|-----------|-----------|-----------|
| Channel<br>Bandwidth<br>Modulation<br>Mode | 5<br>MHz | 10<br>MHz | 15<br>MHz | 30<br>MH<br>z | All<br>Bands             | 5<br>MHz | 10<br>MHz | 15<br>MHz | 30<br>MHz |
| BPSK 0.63 single                           | -97.1    | -94.1     | -92.0     | -88.7         | +25.0                    | 168.1    | 165.1     | 163.0     | 159.7     |
| QPSK 0.63 single                           | -90.7    | -88.1     | -87.1     | -82.5         | +24.0                    | 160.7    | 158.1     | 157.1     | 152.5     |
| QPSK 0.87 single                           | -87.2    | -84.4     | -83.5     | -79.3         | +23.0                    | 156.2    | 153.4     | 152.5     | 148.3     |
| 16QAM 0.63 single                          | -85.0    | -81.9     | -81.2     | -77.1         | +22.0                    | 153.0    | 149.9     | 149.2     | 145.1     |
| 16QAM 0.63 dual                            | -81.9    | -78.8     | -77.5     | -73.5         | +22.0                    | 149.9    | 146.8     | 145.5     | 141.5     |
| 16QAM 0.87 single                          | -80.9    | -78.0     | -76.7     | -72.9         | +20.0                    | 146.9    | 143.9     | 142.7     | 138.9     |
| 16QAM 0.87 dual                            | -76.5    | -73.9     | -73.2     | -70.0         | +20.0                    | 142.5    | 139.9     | 139.2     | 136.0     |
| 64QAM 0.75 single                          | -77.0    | -74.6     | -73.6     | -70.3         | +18.0                    | 141.0    | 138.6     | 137.6     | 134.3     |
| 64QAM 0.75 dual                            | -73.1    | -71.0     | -70.4     | -67.5         | +18.0                    | 137.1    | 135.0     | 134.4     | 131.5     |
| 64QAM 0.92 single                          | -72.1    | -71.0     | -68.9     | -65.7         | +18.0                    | 136.1    | 135.0     | 132.9     | 129.7     |
| 64 QAM 0.92 dual                           | -70.2    | -67.2     | -66.1     | -62.1         | +18.0                    | 134.2    | 131.1     | 130.1     | 126.1     |
| 256QAM 0.81 single                         | N/A      | N/A       | N/A       | -63.9         | +18.0                    | N/A      | N/A       | N/A       | 127.9     |
| 256QAM 0.81 dual                           | N/A      | N/A       | N/A       | -59.9         | +18.0                    | N/A      | N/A       | N/A       | 123.9     |

Table 4-60 PTP 59600 - IP mode - threshold, power and loss per modulation mode

|  | Thresh   | ıold Valu | ıe (dBm)  |               | Output<br>Power<br>(dBm) | Maximum Link Loss (dB) |           |           | 1B)       |
|--|----------|-----------|-----------|---------------|--------------------------|------------------------|-----------|-----------|-----------|
| Channel<br>Bandwidth<br>Modulation<br>Mode | 5<br>MHz | 10<br>MHz | 15<br>MHz | 30<br>MH<br>z | All<br>Bands             | 5<br>MHz               | 10<br>MHz | 15<br>MHz | 30<br>MHz |
| BPSK 0.63 single                           | -97.1    | -94.1     | -92.0     | -88.7         | +25.0                    | 168.1                  | 165.1     | 163.0     | 159.7     |
| QPSK 0.63 single                           | -88.5    | -86.1     | -84.4     | -79.4         | +24.0                    | 158.5                  | 156.1     | 154.4     | 149.4     |
| QPSK 0.87 single                           | -84.6    | -81.9     | -80.1     | -76.0         | +23.0                    | 153.6                  | 150.9     | 149.1     | 145.0     |
| 16QAM 0.63 single                          | -82.5    | -79.6     | -77.8     | -73.7         | +22.0                    | 150.4                  | 147.6     | 145.8     | 141.7     |
| 16QAM 0.63 dual                            | -78.8    | -76.0     | -74.1     | -70.4         | +22.0                    | 146.8                  | 144.0     | 142.1     | 138.4     |
| 16QAM 0.87 single                          | -78.3    | -75.1     | -73.7     | -70.2         | +20.0                    | 144.3                  | 141.1     | 139.7     | 136.2     |
| 16QAM 0.87 dual                            | -74.2    | -71.6     | -70.2     | -66.9         | +20.0                    | 140.2                  | 137.6     | 134.2     | 132.9     |
| 64QAM 0.75 single                          | -74.7    | -71.4     | -70.2     | -67.3         | +18.0                    | 138.7                  | 135.4     | 134.2     | 131.3     |
| 64QAM 0.75 dual                            | -70.9    | -68.3     | -66.8     | -63.6         | +18.0                    | 134.8                  | 132.2     | 130.8     | 127.6     |
| 64QAM 0.92 single                          | -71.2    | -68.1     | -67.0     | -63.3         | +18.0                    | 135.2                  | 132.0     | 131.0     | 127.3     |
| 64 QAM 0.92 dual                           | -66.7    | -64.2     | -62.7     | -58.7         | +18.0                    | 130.7                  | 128.2     | 126.7     | 122.7     |
| 256QAM 0.81 single                         | N/A      | N/A       | N/A       | -63.3         | +18.0                    | N/A                    | N/A       | N/A       | 127.3     |
| 256QAM 0.81 dual                           | N/A      | N/A       | N/A       | -58.7         | +18.0                    | N/A                    | N/A       | N/A       | 122.7     |

#### Table 4-61 PTP 59600 - TDM mode - threshold, power and loss per modulation mode

.....

# Data rate calculations

This section provides instructions, tables and graphs to allow calculation of the data rate capacity that can be provided by alternative PTP 600 configurations.

The following topics are described in this section:

- Data rate defined on page 4-99
- Calculation procedure and example on page 4-99
- Data throughput capacity on page 4-102
- Range adjustment curves on page 4-113

#### Data rate defined

The data rate capacity of a PTP link is defined as the maximum end-to-end Ethernet throughput (including Ethernet headers) that it can support. It is assumed that Ethernet frames are 1500 octet. Data rate capacity is determined by the following factors:

- Product variant (PTP 600 Full or Lite)
- Link Symmetry
- Link Mode Optimization (IP or TDM)
- Modulation Mode
- Channel Bandwidth
- Link Range

### Calculation procedure and example

#### Procedure

To calculate the data rate capacity of a PTP 600 link, perform Procedure 4-1.

| 1 | Use the tables in Data throughput capacity on page 4-102 to look up the data throughput capacity rates (Tx, Rx and Both) for the required combination of:   |
|---|---|
|   | Link Symmetry   |
|   | Link Mode Optimization  |
|   | Modulation Mode   |
|   | Channel Bandwidth   |
| 2 | The tables contain data rates for PTP 600 Full only. If the ODUs are PTP 600 Lite, divide the data rates by 2.  |
| 3 | The tables contain data rates for links of zero range. Use the curves in Range adjustment curves on page 4-113 to look up the Throughput Factor that must be applied to adjust the data rates for the actual range of the link. |
| 4 | Multiply the data rates by the Throughput Factor to give the throughput capacity of the link.   |

#### Procedure 4-1 Calculating data rate capacity

# 

There is a small difference between the rates for IP and TDM because there is fragmentation in TDM (for low priority traffic) which causes the throughput to be reduced buy approximately 1% compared to the IP mode.

#### Example

Suppose that the link characteristics are:

- Product variant = PTP 600 Lite
- Link Symmetry = 1:1
- Link Mode Optimization = TDM
- Modulation Mode = 64QAM 0.92 Dual
- Channel Bandwidth = 10 MHz
- Link Range = 60 km

The calculation procedure for this example is described in Procedure 4-2.

Procedure 4-2 Example of data rate capacity calculation

| 1 | Use Table 4-63 to look up the data throughput capacity rates:          |
|---|--|
|   | • $Tx = 41.41$ Mbits/s   |
|   | • $Rx = 41.41$ Mbits/s   |
|   | • Both = 82.81 Mbits/s   |
| 2 | Divide these rates by 2 to give PTP 600 Lite rates:                    |
|   | • Tx = 20.70 Mbits/s   |
|   | • Rx = 20.70 Mbits/s   |
|   | • Both = 41.40 Mbits/s   |
|   |  |
| 3 | Use Figure 4-38 to look up the Throughput Factor for 1:1, TDM and Link |
|   | Range 60 km. The factor is 0.86.                                       |
| 4 | Multiply the rates from Step 2 by the Throughput Factor from Step 3 to |
|   | give the throughput capacity of the link:                              |
|   | • Tx = 17.80 Mbits/s   |
|   | • Rx = 17.80 Mbits/s   |
|   | • Both = 35.60 Mbits/s   |

# Data throughput capacity

Table 4-62, Table 4-63, Table 4-64, Table 4-65 and Table 4-66 show the data throughput rates (Mbits/s) that are achieved when two PTP 600 Full ODUs are linked and the link distance (range) is 0 km. Use the curves in Range adjustment curves on page 4-113 to adjust these figures to allow for link range.

# 

When using these tables, be aware of the factors that affect data throughput, as listed below.

Data throughput capacity is restricted by the following factors:

- PTP 600 Lite data rates are half the PTP 600 Full rates given in this section.
- Modulation Mode "256QAM 0.81 dual" is not available in all product variants and channel bandwidths.
- Throughput for Link Symmetry 2:1 is the same as that for 1:2, but the Tx and Rx data rates are swapped.
- The data rates for Adaptive symmetry apply to the most asymmetric case where the link has significant offered traffic in one direction only. The data rates for Adaptive symmetry with bidirectional offered traffic are the same as those for Link Symmetry = 1:1 with Link Optimization = IP.

|                   | 30 MHz |        |        | 20 MHz |        |        | 15 MHz |       |        |
|-------------------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|-------|--------|
| Modulation Mode   | Тх     | Rx     | Both   | Тх     | Rx     | Both   | Tx     | Rx    | Both   |
| 256QAM 0.81 dual  | 150.01 | 150.01 | 300.02 | 100.06 | 100.06 | 200.12 | 75.37  | 75.37 | 150.74 |
| 64QAM 0.92 dual   | 126.39 | 126.39 | 252.78 | 84.30  | 84.30  | 168.61 | 63.50  | 63.50 | 127.01 |
| 64QAM 0.75 dual   | 103.28 | 103.28 | 206.57 | 68.89  | 68.89  | 137.78 | 51.89  | 51.89 | 103.79 |
| 16QAM 0.87 dual   | 80.35  | 80.35  | 160.70 | 53.60  | 53.60  | 107.19 | 40.37  | 40.37 | 80.74  |
| 16QAM 0.63 dual   | 57.76  | 57.76  | 115.52 | 38.53  | 38.53  | 77.06  | 29.02  | 29.02 | 58.04  |
| 256QAM 0.81       |        |        |        | 50.03  | 50.03  | 100.06 |        |       |        |
| single            | 75.00  | 75.00  | 150.01 |        |        |        | 37.69  | 37.69 | 75.37  |
| 64QAM 0.92 single | 63.19  | 63.19  | 126.39 | 42.15  | 42.15  | 84.30  | 31.75  | 31.75 | 63.50  |
| 64QAM 0.75 single | 51.64  | 51.64  | 103.28 | 34.45  | 34.45  | 68.89  | 25.95  | 25.95 | 51.89  |
| 16QAM 0.87 single | 40.17  | 40.17  | 80.35  | 26.80  | 26.80  | 53.59  | 20.18  | 20.18 | 40.37  |
| 16QAM 0.63 single | 28.88  | 28.88  | 57.76  | 19.26  | 19.26  | 38.53  | 14.51  | 14.51 | 29.02  |
| QPSK 0.87 single  | 20.09  | 20.09  | 40.17  | 13.40  | 13.40  | 26.79  | 10.09  | 10.09 | 20.18  |
| QPSK 0.63 single  | 14.44  | 14.44  | 28.88  | 9.63   | 9.63   | 19.26  | 7.25   | 7.25  | 14.51  |
| BPSK 0.63 single  | 7.22   | 7.22   | 14.44  | 4.81   | 4.81   | 9.63   | 3.63   | 3.63  | 7.25   |

 Table 4-62
 Throughput for PTP 600 Full, link symmetry 1:1, link optimization IP

At zero range. All rates are in Mbit/s.

|                   | 10 MH | Iz    |        | 5 MHz |       |       |  |
|-------------------|-------|-------|--------|-------|-------|-------|--|
| Modulation Mode   | Tx    | Rx    | Both   | Tx    | Rx    | Both  |  |
| 256QAM 0.81 dual  | 50.11 | 50.11 | 100.21 | 24.22 | 24.22 | 48.43 |  |
| 64QAM 0.92 dual   | 42.22 | 42.22 | 84.43  | 20.40 | 20.40 | 40.80 |  |
| 64QAM 0.75 dual   | 34.50 | 34.50 | 69.00  | 16.67 | 16.67 | 33.34 |  |
| 16QAM 0.87 dual   | 26.84 | 26.84 | 53.68  | 12.97 | 12.97 | 25.94 |  |
| 16QAM 0.63 dual   | 19.29 | 19.29 | 38.59  | 9.32  | 9.32  | 18.65 |  |
| 256QAM 0.81       |       |       |        |       |       |       |  |
| single            | 25.05 | 25.05 | 50.11  | 12.11 | 12.11 | 24.21 |  |
| 64QAM 0.92 single | 21.11 | 21.11 | 42.21  | 10.20 | 10.20 | 20.40 |  |
| 64QAM 0.75 single | 17.25 | 17.25 | 34.50  | 8.34  | 8.34  | 16.67 |  |
| 16QAM 0.87 single | 13.42 | 13.42 | 26.84  | 6.48  | 6.48  | 12.97 |  |
| 16QAM 0.63 single | 9.65  | 9.65  | 19.29  | 4.66  | 4.66  | 9.32  |  |
| QPSK 0.87 single  | 6.71  | 6.71  | 13.42  | 3.24  | 3.24  | 6.48  |  |
| QPSK 0.63 single  | 4.82  | 4.82  | 9.64   | 2.33  | 2.33  | 4.66  |  |
| BPSK 0.63 single  | 2.41  | 2.41  | 4.82   | 1.16  | 1.16  | 2.33  |  |

# Table 4-62 Throughput for PTP 600 Full, link symmetry 1:1, link optimization IP<br/>(continued)

|                   | 30 MHz |        |        | 20 MHz |       |        | 15 MHz |       |        |
|-------------------|--------|--------|--------|--------|-------|--------|--------|-------|--------|
| Modulation Mode   | Тх     | Rx     | Both   | Тх     | Rx    | Both   | Тх     | Rx    | Both   |
| 256QAM 0.81 dual  | 140.87 | 140.87 | 281.74 | 96.01  | 96.01 | 192.02 | 72.92  | 72.92 | 145.83 |
| 64QAM 0.92 dual   | 118.69 | 118.69 | 237.38 | 80.89  | 80.89 | 161.78 | 61.43  | 61.43 | 122.87 |
| 64QAM 0.75 dual   | 96.99  | 96.99  | 193.98 | 66.10  | 66.10 | 132.21 | 50.20  | 50.20 | 100.41 |
| 16QAM 0.87 dual   | 75.45  | 75.45  | 150.91 | 51.43  | 51.43 | 102.85 | 39.06  | 39.06 | 78.11  |
| 16QAM 0.63 dual   | 54.24  | 54.24  | 108.48 | 36.97  | 36.97 | 73.94  | 28.08  | 28.08 | 56.15  |
| 256QAM 0.81       |        |        |        | 48.00  | 48.00 | 96.01  |        |       |        |
| single            | 70.43  | 70.43  | 140.87 |        |       |        | 36.46  | 36.46 | 72.91  |
| 64QAM 0.92 single | 59.34  | 59.34  | 118.69 | 40.44  | 40.44 | 80.89  | 30.72  | 30.72 | 61.43  |
| 64QAM 0.75 single | 48.49  | 48.49  | 96.99  | 33.05  | 33.05 | 66.10  | 25.10  | 25.10 | 50.20  |
| 16QAM 0.87 single | 37.73  | 37.73  | 75.45  | 25.71  | 25.71 | 51.42  | 19.53  | 19.53 | 39.05  |
| 16QAM 0.63 single | 27.12  | 27.12  | 54.24  | 18.48  | 18.48 | 36.97  | 14.04  | 14.04 | 28.07  |
| QPSK 0.87 single  | 18.86  | 18.86  | 37.72  | 12.85  | 12.85 | 25.71  | 9.76   | 9.76  | 19.52  |
| QPSK 0.63 single  | 13.56  | 13.56  | 27.12  | 9.24   | 9.24  | 18.48  | 7.02   | 7.02  | 14.03  |
| BPSK 0.63 single  | 6.78   | 6.78   | 13.56  | 4.62   | 4.62  | 9.24   | 3.51   | 3.51  | 7.02   |

**Table 4-63** Throughput for PTP 600 Full, link symmetry 1:1, link optimization TDM

At zero range. All rates are in Mbit/s.

|                   | 10 MH | z     |       | 5 MHz |       |       |  |
|-------------------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|--|
| Modulation Mode   | Тх    | Rx    | Both  | Тх    | Rx    | Both  |  |
| 256QAM 0.81 dual  | 49.14 | 49.14 | 98.29 | 24.22 | 24.22 | 48.43 |  |
| 64QAM 0.92 dual   | 41.41 | 41.41 | 82.81 | 20.40 | 20.40 | 40.80 |  |
| 64QAM 0.75 dual   | 33.84 | 33.84 | 67.67 | 16.67 | 16.67 | 33.34 |  |
| 16QAM 0.87 dual   | 26.32 | 26.32 | 52.64 | 12.97 | 12.97 | 25.94 |  |
| 16QAM 0.63 dual   | 18.92 | 18.92 | 37.84 | 9.32  | 9.32  | 18.65 |  |
| 256QAM 0.81       |       |       |       |       |       |       |  |
| single            | 24.57 | 24.57 | 49.14 | 12.11 | 12.11 | 24.21 |  |
| 64QAM 0.92 single | 20.70 | 20.70 | 41.40 | 10.20 | 10.20 | 20.40 |  |
| 64QAM 0.75 single | 16.92 | 16.92 | 33.83 | 8.34  | 8.34  | 16.67 |  |
| 16QAM 0.87 single | 13.16 | 13.16 | 26.32 | 6.48  | 6.48  | 12.97 |  |
| 16QAM 0.63 single | 9.46  | 9.46  | 18.92 | 4.66  | 4.66  | 9.32  |  |
| QPSK 0.87 single  | 6.58  | 6.58  | 13.16 | 3.24  | 3.24  | 6.48  |  |
| QPSK 0.63 single  | 4.73  | 4.73  | 9.46  | 2.33  | 2.33  | 4.66  |  |
| BPSK 0.63 single  | 2.36  | 2.36  | 4.73  | 1.16  | 1.16  | 2.33  |  |

# Table 4-63 Throughput for PTP 600 Full, link symmetry 1:1, link optimization TDM<br/>(continued)

|                   | 30 MHz |       |        | 20 MHz |       |        | 15 MHz |       |        |
|-------------------|--------|-------|--------|--------|-------|--------|--------|-------|--------|
| Modulation Mode   | Тх     | Rx    | Both   | Tx     | Rx    | Both   | Tx     | Rx    | Both   |
| 256QAM 0.81 dual  | 198.58 | 99.29 | 297.88 | 133.42 | 66.71 | 200.12 | 100.50 | 50.25 | 150.74 |
| 64QAM 0.92 dual   | 167.31 | 83.66 | 250.97 | 112.41 | 56.20 | 168.61 | 84.67  | 42.33 | 127.01 |
| 64QAM 0.75 dual   | 136.73 | 68.36 | 205.09 | 91.86  | 45.93 | 137.78 | 69.19  | 34.59 | 103.79 |
| 16QAM 0.87 dual   | 106.37 | 53.18 | 159.55 | 71.46  | 35.73 | 107.19 | 53.83  | 26.91 | 80.74  |
| 16QAM 0.63 dual   | 76.47  | 38.23 | 114.70 | 51.37  | 25.68 | 77.06  | 38.70  | 19.35 | 58.04  |
| 256QAM 0.81       |        |       |        | 66.71  | 33.35 | 100.06 |        |       |        |
| single            | 99.29  | 49.64 | 148.94 |        |       |        | 50.25  | 25.12 | 75.37  |
| 64QAM 0.92 single | 83.66  | 41.83 | 125.48 | 56.20  | 28.10 | 84.30  | 42.33  | 21.17 | 63.50  |
| 64QAM 0.75 single | 68.36  | 34.18 | 102.54 | 45.93  | 22.96 | 68.89  | 34.59  | 17.30 | 51.89  |
| 16QAM 0.87 single | 53.18  | 26.59 | 79.77  | 35.73  | 17.86 | 53.59  | 26.91  | 13.46 | 40.37  |
| 16QAM 0.63 single | 38.23  | 19.11 | 57.35  | 25.68  | 12.84 | 38.53  | 19.35  | 9.67  | 29.02  |
| QPSK 0.87 single  | 26.59  | 13.29 | 39.88  | 17.86  | 8.93  | 26.79  | 13.46  | 6.73  | 20.18  |
| QPSK 0.63 single  | 19.11  | 9.56  | 28.67  | 12.84  | 6.42  | 19.26  | 9.67   | 4.84  | 14.51  |
| BPSK 0.63 single  | 9.56   | 4.78  | 14.33  | 6.42   | 3.21  | 9.63   | 4.84   | 2.42  | 7.25   |

**Table 4-64** Throughput for PTP 600 Full, link symmetry 2:1, link optimization = IP

At zero range. All rates are in Mbit/s.

|                       | 10 MHz |       |       |  |  |  |
|-----------------------|--------|-------|-------|--|--|--|
| Modulation Mode       | Тх     | Rx    | Both  |  |  |  |
| 256QAM 0.81 dual      | 66.38  | 33.19 | 99.56 |  |  |  |
| 64QAM 0.92 dual       | 55.92  | 27.96 | 83.88 |  |  |  |
| 64QAM 0.75 dual       | 45.70  | 22.85 | 68.55 |  |  |  |
| 16QAM 0.87 dual       | 35.55  | 17.78 | 53.33 |  |  |  |
| 16QAM 0.63 dual       | 25.56  | 12.78 | 38.34 |  |  |  |
| 256QAM 0.81<br>single | 33.19  | 16.59 | 49.78 |  |  |  |
| 64QAM 0.92 single     | 27.96  | 13.98 | 41.94 |  |  |  |
| 64QAM 0.75 single     | 22.85  | 11.42 | 34.27 |  |  |  |
| 16QAM 0.87 single     | 17.78  | 8.89  | 26.66 |  |  |  |
| 16QAM 0.63 single     | 12.78  | 6.39  | 19.17 |  |  |  |
| QPSK 0.87 single      | 8.89   | 4.44  | 13.33 |  |  |  |
| QPSK 0.63 single      | 6.39   | 3.19  | 9.58  |  |  |  |
| BPSK 0.63 single      | 3.19   | 1.60  | 4.79  |  |  |  |

# Table 4-64 Throughput for PTP 600 Full, link symmetry 2:1, link optimization = IP

(continued)

This combination is not available with Channel Bandwidth 5 MHz.

|                   | 30 MHz |       |        | 20 MHz |       |        | 15 MHz |       |        |
|-------------------|--------|-------|--------|--------|-------|--------|--------|-------|--------|
| Modulation Mode   | Тх     | Rx    | Both   | Тх     | Rx    | Both   | Тх     | Rx    | Both   |
| 256QAM 0.81 dual  | 193.06 | 96.53 | 289.58 | 130.66 | 65.33 | 195.99 | 98.83  | 49.42 | 148.25 |
| 64QAM 0.92 dual   | 162.66 | 81.33 | 243.98 | 110.08 | 55.04 | 165.13 | 83.27  | 41.63 | 124.90 |
| 64QAM 0.75 dual   | 132.92 | 66.46 | 199.38 | 89.96  | 44.98 | 134.94 | 68.05  | 34.02 | 102.07 |
| 16QAM 0.87 dual   | 103.41 | 51.70 | 155.11 | 69.98  | 34.99 | 104.98 | 52.94  | 26.47 | 79.40  |
| 16QAM 0.63 dual   | 74.34  | 37.17 | 111.50 | 50.31  | 25.15 | 75.46  | 38.05  | 19.03 | 57.08  |
| 256QAM 0.81       |        |       |        | 65.33  | 32.66 | 97.99  |        |       |        |
| single            | 96.53  | 48.26 | 144.79 |        |       |        | 49.42  | 24.71 | 74.12  |
| 64QAM 0.92 single | 81.33  | 40.66 | 121.99 | 55.04  | 27.52 | 82.56  | 41.63  | 20.82 | 62.45  |
| 64QAM 0.75 single | 66.46  | 33.23 | 99.69  | 44.98  | 22.49 | 67.47  | 34.02  | 17.01 | 51.03  |
| 16QAM 0.87 single | 51.70  | 25.85 | 77.55  | 34.99  | 17.49 | 52.49  | 26.47  | 13.23 | 39.70  |
| 16QAM 0.63 single | 37.17  | 18.58 | 55.75  | 25.15  | 12.58 | 37.73  | 19.03  | 9.51  | 28.54  |
| QPSK 0.87 single  | 25.85  | 12.92 | 38.77  | 17.49  | 8.75  | 26.24  | 13.23  | 6.62  | 19.85  |
| QPSK 0.63 single  | 18.58  | 9.29  | 27.87  | 12.58  | 6.29  | 18.86  | 9.51   | 4.76  | 14.27  |
| BPSK 0.63 single  | 9.29   | 4.64  | 13.93  | 6.29   | 3.14  | 9.43   | 4.76   | 2.38  | 7.13   |

**Table 4-65** Throughput for PTP 600 Full, link symmetry 2:1, link optimization = TDM

At zero range. All rates are in Mbit/s.

| Modulation            | 10 MHz |       |       |  |  |  |
|-----------------------|--------|-------|-------|--|--|--|
| Mode                  | Тх     | Rx    | Both  |  |  |  |
| 256QAM 0.81 dual      | 66.38  | 33.19 | 99.56 |  |  |  |
| 64QAM 0.92 dual       | 55.92  | 27.96 | 83.88 |  |  |  |
| 64QAM 0.75 dual       | 45.70  | 22.85 | 68.55 |  |  |  |
| 16QAM 0.87 dual       | 35.55  | 17.78 | 53.33 |  |  |  |
| 16QAM 0.63 dual       | 25.56  | 12.78 | 38.34 |  |  |  |
| 256QAM 0.81<br>single | 33.19  | 16.59 | 49.78 |  |  |  |
| 64QAM 0.92 single     | 27.96  | 13.98 | 41.94 |  |  |  |
| 64QAM 0.75 single     | 22.85  | 11.42 | 34.27 |  |  |  |
| 16QAM 0.87 single     | 17.78  | 8.89  | 26.66 |  |  |  |
| 16QAM 0.63 single     | 12.78  | 6.39  | 19.17 |  |  |  |
| QPSK 0.87 single      | 8.89   | 4.44  | 13.33 |  |  |  |
| QPSK 0.63 single      | 6.39   | 3.19  | 9.58  |  |  |  |
| BPSK 0.63 single      | 3.19   | 1.60  | 4.79  |  |  |  |

#### Table 4-65 Throughput for PTP 600 Full, link symmetry 2:1, link optimization = TDM

(continued)

This combination is not available with Channel Bandwidth 5 MHz.

|                   | 30 MHz |       |        | 20 MHz |       |        | 15 MHz |       |        |
|-------------------|--------|-------|--------|--------|-------|--------|--------|-------|--------|
| Modulation Mode   | Тх     | Rx    | Both   | Тх     | Rx    | Both   | Тх     | Rx    | Both   |
| 256QAM 0.81 dual  | 236.95 | 59.23 | 296.18 | 148.53 | 49.51 | 198.03 | 112.12 | 37.37 | 149.49 |
| 64QAM 0.92 dual   | 199.63 | 49.91 | 249.54 | 125.14 | 41.71 | 166.85 | 94.46  | 31.49 | 125.95 |
| 64QAM 0.75 dual   | 163.14 | 40.78 | 203.92 | 102.26 | 34.09 | 136.35 | 77.19  | 25.73 | 102.92 |
| 16QAM 0.87 dual   | 126.91 | 31.73 | 158.64 | 79.55  | 26.52 | 106.07 | 60.05  | 20.02 | 80.07  |
| 16QAM 0.63 dual   | 91.24  | 22.81 | 114.04 | 57.19  | 19.06 | 76.25  | 43.17  | 14.39 | 57.56  |
| 256QAM 0.81       |        |       |        | 74.26  | 24.75 | 99.02  |        |       |        |
| single            | 118.47 | 29.62 | 148.09 |        |       |        | 56.06  | 18.68 | 74.74  |
| 64QAM 0.92 single | 99.82  | 24.95 | 124.77 | 62.57  | 20.85 | 83.42  | 47.23  | 15.74 | 62.97  |
| 64QAM 0.75 single | 81.57  | 20.39 | 101.96 | 51.13  | 17.04 | 68.17  | 38.59  | 12.86 | 51.46  |
| 16QAM 0.87 single | 63.46  | 15.86 | 79.32  | 39.78  | 13.26 | 53.03  | 30.02  | 10.01 | 40.03  |
| 16QAM 0.63 single | 45.62  | 11.40 | 57.02  | 28.59  | 9.53  | 38.12  | 21.58  | 7.19  | 28.78  |
| QPSK 0.87 single  | 31.73  | 7.93  | 39.66  | 19.89  | 6.63  | 26.51  | 15.01  | 5.00  | 20.01  |
| QPSK 0.63 single  | 22.81  | 5.70  | 28.51  | 14.30  | 4.76  | 19.06  | 10.79  | 3.60  | 14.39  |
| BPSK 0.63 single  | 11.40  | 2.85  | 14.25  | 7.15   | 2.38  | 9.53   | 5.39   | 1.80  | 7.19   |

**Table 4-66** Throughput for PTP 600 Full, link symmetry Adaptive, link optimization =IP

At zero range. All rates are in Mbit/s.

|                       | 10 MHz |       |       |  |  |  |
|-----------------------|--------|-------|-------|--|--|--|
| Modulation Mode       | Тх     | Rx    | Both  |  |  |  |
| 256QAM 0.81 dual      | 66.38  | 33.19 | 99.56 |  |  |  |
| 64QAM 0.92 dual       | 55.92  | 27.96 | 83.88 |  |  |  |
| 64QAM 0.75 dual       | 45.70  | 22.85 | 68.55 |  |  |  |
| 16QAM 0.87 dual       | 35.55  | 17.78 | 53.33 |  |  |  |
| 16QAM 0.63 dual       | 25.56  | 12.78 | 38.34 |  |  |  |
| 256QAM 0.81<br>single | 33.19  | 16.59 | 49.78 |  |  |  |
| 64QAM 0.92 single     | 27.96  | 13.98 | 41.94 |  |  |  |
| 64QAM 0.75 single     | 22.85  | 11.42 | 34.27 |  |  |  |
| 16QAM 0.87 single     | 17.78  | 8.89  | 26.66 |  |  |  |
| 16QAM 0.63 single     | 12.78  | 6.39  | 19.17 |  |  |  |
| QPSK 0.87 single      | 8.89   | 4.44  | 13.33 |  |  |  |
| QPSK 0.63 single      | 6.39   | 3.19  | 9.58  |  |  |  |
| BPSK 0.63 single      | 3.19   | 1.60  | 4.79  |  |  |  |

# Table 4-66 Throughput for PTP 600 Full, link symmetry Adaptive, link optimization = IP (continued)

This combination is not available with Channel Bandwidth 5 MHz.

\_

### Range adjustment curves

Use these curves to look up the link Range and find the Throughput Factor that must be applied to adjust the 0 km data throughput rates for the required combination of Channel Bandwidth, Link Symmetry, Link Optimization, DFS and Link Range (km).

| Channel<br>Band-<br>width | Link<br>Sym-<br>metry | Link<br>Optimis-<br>ation | DFS            | Range<br>Adjustment<br>Curve | See Figure  |
|---------------------------|-----------------------|---------------------------|----------------|------------------------------|-------------|
| 30 MHz                    | 1:1                   | IP                        |                | А                            | Figure 4-30 |
|                           |                       | TDM                       |                | В                            | Figure 4-31 |
|                           | 2:1                   | IP                        |                | С                            | Figure 4-32 |
|                           |                       | TDM                       |                | D                            | Figure 4-33 |
|                           | Adaptive              | IP                        |                | E                            | Figure 4-34 |
| 20 MHz                    | 1:1                   | IP                        |                | L                            | Figure 4-39 |
|                           |                       | TDM                       |                | Ν                            | Figure 4-40 |
|                           | 2:1                   | IP                        |                | L                            | Figure 4-39 |
|                           |                       | TDM                       |                | 0                            | Figure 4-41 |
|                           | Adaptive              | IP                        |                | С                            | Figure 4-32 |
| 15 MHz                    | 1:1                   | IP                        |                | F                            | Figure 4-35 |
|                           |                       | TDM                       |                | G                            | Figure 4-36 |
|                           | 2:1                   | IP                        | None           | F                            | Figure 4-35 |
|                           |                       |                           | FCC or<br>ETSI | С                            | Figure 4-32 |

 Table 4-67
 Range adjustment characteristics

| Channel<br>Band-<br>width | Link<br>Sym-<br>metry | Link<br>Optimis-<br>ation | DFS            | Range<br>Adjustment<br>Curve | See Figure  |
|---------------------------|-----------------------|---------------------------|----------------|------------------------------|-------------|
|                           |                       | TDM                       | None           | Н                            | Figure 4-37 |
|                           |                       |                           | FCC or<br>ETSI | С                            | Figure 4-32 |
|                           | Adaptive              | IP                        |                | А                            | Figure 4-30 |
| 10 MHz                    | 1:1                   | IP                        |                | F                            | Figure 4-35 |
|                           |                       | TDM                       |                | К                            | Figure 4-38 |
|                           | 2:1                   | IP                        |                | L                            | Figure 4-39 |
|                           |                       | TDM                       |                | L                            | Figure 4-39 |
|                           | Adaptive              | IP                        |                | L                            | Figure 4-39 |
| 5 MHz                     | 1:1                   | IP, TDM                   |                | С                            | Figure 4-32 |



Figure 4-30 PTP 600 range adjustment for data rates, curve A





phn-0896\_009v003 Feb 2010



Figure 4-32 PTP 600 range adjustment for data rates, curve C







Figure 4-34 PTP 600 range adjustment for data rates, curve E







Figure 4-36 PTP 600 range adjustment for data rates, curve G







Figure 4-38 PTP 600 range adjustment for data rates, curve K







#### Figure 4-40 PTP 600 range adjustment for data rates, curve N



Figure 4-41 PTP 600 range adjustment for data rates, curve O

Data rate calculations

phn-0896\_009v003 Feb 2010

#### UNDER DEVELOPMENT

# **Chapter 5 Installation**

This chapter provides instructions for installing a PTP 600 link.

#### 

Motorola recommends that only qualified personnel undertake the installation of a PTP 600 Series solution.

Motorola recommends that the practices and procedures detailed in manual *R56 STANDARDS AND GUIDELINES FOR COMMUNICATION SITES (68P81089E50)* should be applied to all new site build activities. This manual is provided on the PTP 600 CD-ROM.

The PTP 600 Series installation procedure consists of the following tasks:

- Checking the configuration on page 5-2
- Preparing for site installation on page 5-7
- Cable connection procedures on page 5-8
- Mounting the ODUs on page 5-19
- Installing the UltraSync GPS receiver on page 5-23
- Installing the GPS receiver for PTP-SYNC on page 5-28
- Installing PTP-SYNC on page 5-36
- Connecting the ODU, PIDU and LPUs on page 5-43
- Installing E1 and T1 on page 5-50
- Establishing a radio link on page 5-59

If a connectorized PTP 600 variant is to be installed, see Chapter 8 Connectorized PTP 600 series.

#### Legal disclaimer

IN NO EVENT SHALL MOTOROLA, INC. BE LIABLE FOR ANY INJURY TO ANY PERSONS OR ANY DAMAGE CAUSED DURING THE INSTALLATION OF THE MOTOROLA PTP 600 SERIES PRODUCT.

\_\_\_\_\_

# Checking the configuration

This section describes how to configure the management PC, power up the unit, connect it to the PC and check the factory configuration. Motorola recommends that these tasks should be performed before site installation.

## **IP** addresses of the Master and Slave units

The PTP 600 is supplied as a pair of matched units, a Master and a Slave. The usual default IP addresses are:

- Master: 169.254.1.2
- Slave: 169.254.1.1

However, some units may have been configured with different IP addresses:

- Master: 10.10.10.11
- Slave: 10.10.10.10

## Configuring the IP interface on the PC

Before powering up the unit, set up the IP configuration of the management PC.

If the default IP addresses of the Master and Slave units are 169.254.1.2 and 169.254.1.1, then set up the IP configuration of the PC as follows:

- Enter an IP address of 169.254.1.n, where n is any value between 3 and 254. Do not use 169.254.1.1 or 169.254.1.2.
- Enter a subnet mask of 255.255.0.0.

If the default IP addresses of the Master and Slave units are 10.10.10.11 and 10.10.10.10, then set up the IP configuration of the PC as follows:

- Enter an IP address of 10.10.10.n, where n is between 2 and 254. Do not use 10.10.10.10 or 10.10.10.11.
- Enter a subnet mask of 255.255.0.0.

## Powering up and connecting the PIDU Plus

When the management PC has been configured with the correct IP address and subnet mask, the PIDU can be powered up and connected to the management PC. To power up the PIDU and connect it to the PC, proceed as follows:

Procedure 5-1 Power up and connect the PIDU Plus


## **Opening the web interface**

When the unit has been powered up and connected to the management PC, the web interface can be opened. To open the PTP 600 web interface on the management PC, proceed as follows:

**Procedure 5-2** Open the web interface

| 1 | Start the web browser.   |
|---|--|
| 2 | Type the IP address of the unit into the address frame, for example: 169.254.1.2.  |
| 3 | Press ENTER. The login page (Figure 6-7) is displayed.   |
| 4 | Leave the Password blank and select <b>Login</b> . The web interface menu (Figure 6-1) and System Summary page (Figure 6-2) are displayed. |

# **Checking LAN configuration**

The unit must be configured to be compatible with the network. It is particularly important to avoid IP address conflicts. To check the LAN configuration, proceed as follows:

Procedure 5-3 Check LAN configuration

| 1 | Design the desired configuration of the network to be installed, noting the required IP Address, Subnet Mask and Gateway IP Address of the Master and Slave units. |
|---|--|
| 2 | Select <b>LAN Configuration</b> from the menu. The LAN Configuration page (Figure 6-20) is displayed.  |
| 3 | Compare the required IP Address, Subnet Mask and Gateway IP Address to current settings.   |
| 4 | If the current settings are different, update them as described in Configuring the IP and Ethernet interfaces on page 6-42.  |

# **Checking software version**

The software version installed on the unit may not be the latest one available from Motorola. To check and update the software version, proceed as follows:

Procedure 5-4 Check software configuration

| 1 | Select <b>Status</b> from the menu. The System Status page (Figure 6-4) is displayed.   |
|---|---|
| 2 | Check that the Software Version attribute in the System Status page is the same as the latest PTP 600 software version in <a href="http://www.motorola.com/ptp/support">http://www.motorola.com/ptp/support</a> . |
| 3 | If it is not the latest, upgrade it as described in Upgrading PTP 600 software on page 6-84.  |

# Checking region code

The unit is supplied with two alternative license keys, one of which is factory configured. To check that the configured license key is for the required Region Code, proceed as follows:

Procedure 5-5 Check region code

| 1 | Select <b>Status</b> from the menu. The System Status page (Figure 6-4) is displayed.   |
|---|---|
| 2 | Check that the required Region Code attribute is in the System Status page.   |
| 3 | If it is not, replace the license key of the unit with the supplied alternative license key, as described in Entering a license key on page 6-80. |

# **Checking wireless configuration**

To check that the factory wireless configuration meets network requirements, proceed as follows:

Procedure 5-6 Check wireless configuration

| 1 | Select <b>Installation</b> from the menu. The Current Installation Summary page(Figure 6-27)is displayed.                                     |
|---|---|
| 2 | Confirm that the Target MAC Address, Master Slave Mode, Tx Max Power,<br>Link Symmetry and Target Range attributes meet network requirements. |
| 3 | If they do not, update them as described in Installation pages on page 6-<br>51.  |

# Preparing for site installation

# Checks

Before proceeding with the installation, perform the following checks:

- Plan the link, as described in Chapter 2 Planning considerations.
- Check the configuration of the Master and Slave units, as described in Checking the configuration on page 5-2.
- Check the contents of all packages against the parts lists shown in the packing list.
- Ensure that qualified installers are available to undertake the work.
- Ensure that the correct safety precautions are observed.

# **Tools required**

The following specific tools are required to install a PTP 600 Series, in addition to general tools:

- 13mm wrench and 22 mm wrench for use with the glands
- RJ45 crimp tool (it must be the correct tool for the type of RJ45 being used)
- Personal Computer (PC) with 10, 100 or 1000 BaseT Ethernet
- Either Internet Explorer version 6 or higher, or FireFox 2.0 or higher are recommended.
- Ethernet patch cables
- Motorola PTP LINKPlanner report for this link

# Cable connection procedures

This section describes three procedures that may be performed repeatedly in the course of site installation:

- Preparing the supported Superior Essex cable.
- Installing a cable grounding kit.
- Installing a lightning protection unit (LPU)

## Preparing the supported Superior Essex cable

The maximum cable length between the ODU and the user's network equipment is 100m (330 ft). Cable lengths up to 300m (984 ft) can be used where the PIDU Plus to ODU cable is supplying power only, that is, when using the PTP 600 Series optical interface.

For details of recommended cables and connectors, refer to Cables and connectors on page 1-15.

## A WARNING

### The copper screen of the supported Superior Essex cable is very sharp and may cause personal injury. When preparing the Superior Essex cable, take the following safety precautions:

- ALWAYS wear cut resistant gloves (check the label to ensure they are cut resistant).
- ALWAYS wear protective eyewear.
- ALWAYS use a rotary blade tool to strip the cable (DO NOT use a bladed knife). To use the rotary blade tool, fit it around the outer cable sheaf and rotate the cutter around the cable once or twice. The stripped outer section can then be removed.

### Cable assembly

The supported Superior Essex cable should be assembled as shown in Figure 5-1: Figure 5-1 Correct cable preparation for the supported Superior Essex cable



| Cable Type;     | Superior Essex, BBDGE CAT5e              |
|-----------------|--|
| Connector Type; | Tyco (AMP), 5-569278                     |
| Crimp Tool;     | Tyco (AMP), 2-231652; Die set 1-853400-0 |
| Gland;          | Motorola WB1811                          |
|                 |  |

### 

Check that the crimp tool matches the RJ45 connector being used, otherwise the cable or connector may be damaged.

# 

The cable inner sheaf must be located correctly under the connector housing tang. If this is not done correctly, there is no strain relief on the cable terminations.

Both ends of the ODU cable are terminated in the same way. The above procedure should be repeated for the PIDU Plus end of the cable when the cable routing process is complete. This assumes that the installation uses PTP LPUs. If not, then the PIDU Plus end of the cable does not require a Gland, but just the RJ45.

# 

The PIDU Plus end of the cable does not employ a cable gland.

Figure 5-2 shows a completed ODU to PIDU Plus cable.

Figure 5-2 Completed ODU connector



## Grounding the drop cable to a metal tower or mast

For installations where the ODU or GPS receiver (if installed) are fitted to a metal tower or mast, the screen of the supported Superior Essex cable must be ground bonded to the tower or mast.

The cable grounding kit for 1/4" and 3/8" cable (Figure 5-3) contains the following components:

- 1 x grounding cable with grounding 2 hole lug fitted (M10)
- 1 x self Amalgamating tape
- 1 x PVC tape
- 3 x tie wraps
- 2 x bolt, washer and nut

Figure 5-3 Cable grounding kit for 1/4" and 3/8" cable



To ground the supported Superior Essex cable to a metal tower or mast, proceed as follows:









Start the second layer 25mm (1 inch) above the first layer tape, start the third layer below the finish of the second layer. Continue until five layers have been applied, always over lapping at half width.





# Connecting the drop cable to an ODU or LPU

# 

This procedure contains illustrations of an ODU, but it applies in principle to both the ODU and the LPU.

To connect the supported Superior Essex cable with a gland to a unit (LPU or ODU), proceed as follows:

**Procedure 5-8** Connect the drop cable with a gland to a unit (LPU or ODU)









# Disconnecting the drop cable from an ODU or LPU

# 

This procedure contains illustrations of an ODU, but it applies in principle to both the ODU and the LPU.

To disconnect the supported Superior Essex cable with a gland from a unit (LPU or ODU), proceed as follows:

**Procedure 5-9** Disconnect the drop cable with a gland from a unit (LPU or ODU)



-----

# Mounting the ODUs

# **Mounting bracket**

The ODU is pre-fitted with a mounting bracket (designed to ease installation) and with earth bonding leads (Figure 5-5).

Figure 5-5 ODU with mounting bracket and earth bonding leads



# Hoist and safety loop

Use the integral safety loop (Figure 5-6) for hoisting the ODU up a mast, tower or building. When the ODU is in position, use the safety loop as a fixing point to secure a permanent lanyard from the mast, tower or building to the ODU, as a precaution against mounting failure.



Figure 5-6 Integral safety loop

## 

#### **Observe the following safety precautions before hoisting the ODU:**

- The safety lanyard must not exceed 1m (approx 3 ft) in length. The lanyard must be made from a material that does not degrade in an outdoor environment.
- The safety lanyard must be fixed to a separate fixing point that is not part of the direct mounting system for the ODU.
- If the safety loop or its fixing is damaged in any way or has been exposed to a shock loading due to a fall, replace it with a new one before undertaking any further operations.

# **ODU mounting procedure**

# 

# To prevent failure of the assembly, observe the following precautions when mounting the ODU:

- Do not remove the pre-fitted mounting bracket from the ODU.
- $\circ~$  Do not mount the ODU on poles with diameter less than 50mm (2") or greater than 75mm (3"). The ODU mounting bracket is designed to work only with poles with diameter in the 50 mm (2") to 75 mm (3") range.
- Do not over-tighten the bolts.

The ODU must be mounted using the following steps, ensuring that the cable entry is at the bottom:

#### Procedure 5-10 Mounting the ODU





### 

Attach the free end of one earth bonding lead (large tag M10) to the tower metal work. On no account must this be attached to the mounting bracket bolts.

The enclosure and mounting brackets of the PTP 600 Series product range are capable of withstanding wind speeds up to 151mph (242kph). The installer should ensure that the structure the bridge is fixed to is also capable of withstanding the prevalent wind speeds and loads.

\_\_\_\_\_

# Installing the UltraSync GPS receiver

# **Recommended kit**

The UltraSync installation kit includes the following:

- GPS synchronization unit from MemoryLink (see Figure 5-7), with three attached terminated Ethernet and sync cables and cable glands (2) which connect directly to a PTP 600 Series ODU.
- Mounting bracket and mounting bracket bolts
- Outdoor rated UV resistant cable tie
- UltraSync user manual.

In addition to the hardware mentioned above, Motorola recommends the installation of appropriate lightning protection with PTP LPUs, as described in Lightning protection and E1/T1 on page 5-57.

# 

Refer to the UltraSync user manual for details on the lengths of cables used to connect the UltraSync to the ODU and PTP LPU.

Figure 5-7 UltraSync unit



# UltraSync unit connections

Figure 5-8 shows the inside of the UltraSync unit and Figure 5-9 is a diagram that shows how to connect the UltraSync unit to the ODU and the LPU.

Figure 5-8 UltraSync unit connections





### Figure 5-9 UltraSync - PTP600 deployment diagram

# Complete UltraSync unit installation

Figure 5-10 shows an example of mast installation using lightning protection and an UltraSync unit.



### Figure 5-10 UltraSync unit complete installation

phn-0896\_009v003 Feb 2010

# Installing the GPS receiver for PTP-SYNC

If the chosen TDD synchronization method requires a GPS timing reference source (see TDD synchronization configuration options on page 2-12), then a GPS receiver must be installed. Motorola recommends that the Trimble GPS receiver should be used. This section describes the installation procedure for the Trimble GPS receiver.

### 

Prior to power-up of equipment, ensure that all cables are connected to the correct interfaces of the PTP-SYNC unit and the GPS receiver module. Failure to do so may result in damage to the equipment.

## **Recommended kit**

### **Trimble GPS receiver**

One Trimble GPS receiver is required.

#### **Cables and connectors**

The drop cable connecting the GPS receiver to the LPU must be of the supported Superior Essex cable type. The drop cable must have a Trimble 12-pin connector at the GPS end, and an RJ45 connector and gland at the LPU end. For more information, refer to Outdoor connections on page 1-15.

### LPU

One LPU kit (Figure 2-10) is required.

#### Cable grounding kit

If the GPS receiver is mounted on a metal tower or mast, one or more cable grounding kits (Figure 5-3) are required to ground bond the drop cable at the correct grounding points (Figure 2-21).

### **Trimble GPS connector pin definition**

Table 5-1 shows how the Trimble connector pins (at the GPS end of the drop cable) map to the RJ45 connector pins (at the LPU end). Figure 5-11 shows the positions of the pins in each type of connector.

| Trimble     | Function     | RJ45 wire colour |                | PTP-SYNC (J10) |
|-------------|--------------|------------------|----------------|----------------|
| 12-pin conn |              | Conventional     | Superior Essex | RJ45 pin       |
| 1           | DC Pwr (12V) | Orange/White     | Light Orange   | 1              |
| 2           | RxB-         | Brown            | Brown          | 8              |
| 3           | RxB+         | Brown/White      | Light Brown    | 7              |
| 4           | TxB-         | Blue             | Blue           | 4              |
| 5           | TxB+         | Blue/White       | Light Blue     | 5              |
| 6           | RxA-         | N.C              | N.C            |                |
| 7           | RxA+         | N.C              | N.C            |                |
| 8           | TxA-         | N.C              | N.C            |                |
| 9           | DC Ground    | Orange           | Orange         | 2              |
| 10          | TxA+         | N.C              | N.C            |                |
| 11          | Tx1PPS+      | Green/White      | Light Green    | 3              |
| 12          | Tx1PPS-      | Green            | Green          | 6              |

| Table 5-1 | Trimble conn | ector to RJ45 | pin mappings |
|-----------|--------------|---------------|--------------|
|           |              |               |              |



#### Figure 5-11 RJ45 and Trimble connector pins

## Mounting the GPS receiver

Mount the GPS receiver (following manufacturer's instructions) upon either an external wall or a metal tower or mast. Motorola recommends that the receiver is wall mounted. For more information on these options, refer to Protection of the GPS receiver for PTP-SYNC on page 2-36.

## Connecting the GPS receiver to the drop cable

The drop cable must be connected the GPS receiver using the Trimble connector provided.

#### 

The supported Superior Essex cable has solid copper conductors. There is a limited number of times each conductor can be bent before it fatigues and fails.

To fit the Trimble 12-pin connector to the drop cable, proceed as follows:











# Grounding the GPS receiver drop cable

### Wall installation

For installations where the GPS receiver module is fitted to an external wall, it is not necessary to ground bond the GPS cable.

#### Metal tower or mast installation

For installations where the GPS receiver module is fitted to a metal tower or mast, the screen of the GPS cable MUST be ground bonded to the metal tower or mast.

To identify the required grounding points, refer to Mounting the GPS receiver module on a metal tower or mast on page 2-37.

To ground the cable, follow the procedure described in Grounding the drop cable to a metal tower or mast on page 5-11.

## Mounting the LPU and connecting the GPS receiver

To mount the LPU and connect it to the drop cable from the GPS receiver, proceed as follows:

Procedure 5-12 Mount LPU and connect to GPS receiver

| 1 | Check the contents of the LPU box (Figure 2-10).   |  |  |
|---|--|--|--|
| 2 | Mount the LPU (following manufacturer's instructions) at the point where the drop cable from the GPS receiver enters the building (Figure 2-20 or Figure 2-21). Mount the LPU vertically with cable glands facing downwards. |  |  |
| 3 | Prepare the LPU end of the GPS receiver drop cable as described in Preparing the supported Superior Essex cable on page 5-8.   |  |  |
| 4 | Connect the cable gland of the GPS receiver drop cable to the LPU as described in Connecting the drop cable to an ODU or LPU on page 5-16.   |  |  |
| 5 | Make an unscreened CAT5e cable to connect the LPU to the 'GPS/SYNC IN' interface of the PTP-SYNC unit.   |  |  |

\_\_\_\_\_

# Installing PTP-SYNC

# **Recommended kit**

### **PTP-SYNC** kit

The PTP-SYNC kit (Figure 5-12) contains the following components:

- 1 x PTP-SYNC unit
- 1 x M4 pan screw
- 2 x M4 washers
- 2 x M3 (6mm) torx drive screws
- 1 x lug for unit earth (cable not supplied)

#### Figure 5-12 PTP-SYNC kit



### **GPS** timing kit

The GPS receiver module is an optional item that must be purchased separately, if the chosen PTP-SYNC system configuration includes GPS.

phn-0896\_009v003 Feb 2010

### UNDER DEVELOPMENT

### Rack mount installation kit

The PTP800 CMU / PTP-SYNC 19" rack mount installation kit (Figure 5-13) is an optional item that must be purchased separately, if required. This kit contains the following components:

- 1 x rack bracket
- 8 x M3 washers
- 8 x M3 screws
- 1 x rack mount blank plate
- 8 x M5 nuts
- 8 x M5 washers
- 2 x rack handles

#### Figure 5-13 PTP800 CMU / PTP-SYNC 19" rack mount installation kit



# 

Ethernet cables are not provided as part of the PTP-SYNC product or as part of the GPS Module Kit.

# PTP-SYNC unit rack or wall mounting

The PTP-SYNC unit can either be rack mounted indoors or wall mounted indoors.

### Rack mounted

Securing screws for PTP-SYNC within the rack mount are fitted to the underside (Figure 5-14).



Figure 5-14 Rack mount securing screws for PTP-SYNC

### Wall mounted

If the PTP-SYNC is to be wall-mounted, the unit must be fitted vertically with unit interfaces and cabling facing downwards (Figure 5-15).

Figure 5-15 PTP-SYNC mounted on wall



## **Connecting up PTP-SYNC**

To connect the PTP-SYNC to the PIDU, ODU, GPS receiver (if fitted), and LPU (if fitted), proceed as follows:

**Procedure 5-13** Weather-proof the GPS receiver module cable




# Power-up, testing and fault finding

The correct operation is as follows

- Ensure that all cables are connected to the correct interfaces of the PTP-SYNC unit and the GPS receiver module. Failure to do so may result in damage to the equipment.
- Connect mains power to the PIDU unit.
- Within 90 seconds the 'STATUS' LED should blink once every second to show that satellite lock has been achieved.
- If the system does not operate correctly, refer to the fault finding guide below.

# Fault Finding Guide

## LEDs do not illuminate

Ensure that there is a cable connection between the PIDU 'ODU' interface and the 'PIDU IN' interface of the PTP-SYNC unit.

## A 1PPS synchronisation pulse does not appear to be detected by the PTP-SYNC unit (no satellite lock)

Failure of the 'STATUS' LED to illuminate or blink.

Depending on configuration:

1) System using a GPS receiver module - Ensure that there is a cable connection between the PTP-SYNC 'GPS/SYNC IN' interface and the LPU, also that there is a cable connection between the LPU and the GPS receiver module. Check that the GPS receiver module has an uninterrupted view of the sky.

2) System using an alternative 1PPS timing source - Ensure that there is a cable connection between the PTP-SYNC 'GPS/SYNC IN' or '1PPS IN' interface and the 1PPS timing source.

## No communications between clustered PTP-SYNC units

Ensure that there is a cable connection between the 'SYNC OUT' interface of the first PTP-SYNC unit and 'GPS/SYNC IN' interface of the second PTP-SYNC unit.

## No communications between PTP-SYNC and ODU

Failure of the 'ODU' LED to illuminate within 90 seconds of power-up.

Ensure that there is a cable connection between the PTP-SYNC ' ODU OUT' interface and the either the ODU or the LPU unit leading to the ODU.

-----

# Connecting the ODU, PIDU and LPUs

# Locating the PIDU port on the ODU

Looking at the back of the unit with the cable entry at the bottom, the PIDU Plus connection is the first hole on the right (Figure 5-16) and is labeled "PIDU +".

Figure 5-16 ODU PIDU Plus connection



# Connecting the ODU to the PIDU cable

Perform this task to connect the ODU to the drop cable from the PIDU. It is often easier to carry out this procedure on the ground or a suitable surface prior to mounting the ODU.

To prevent damage to the ODU while making or breaking the connection, ensure that power is removed from the system at the PIDU Plus.

To connect the PIDU Plus port of the ODU to the drop cable, proceed as follows:

Procedure 5-14 Connect the PIDU Plus to the ODU

| 1 | Prepare the ODU end of the drop cable as described in Preparing the supported Superior Essex cable on page 5-8.                                     |
|---|---|
| 2 | Connect the cable gland of the drop cable to the PIDU Plus port of the ODU as described in Connecting the drop cable to an ODU or LPU on page 5-16. |

# 

If it is necessary to disconnect the drop cable from the ODU, refer to Disconnecting the drop cable from an ODU or LPU on page 5-18.

# Routing the cable

After connecting the cable to the ODU it can be routed and secured using standard cable routing and securing techniques. When the cable is in place it can then be cut to the desired length at the PIDU Plus prior to connection to the PIDU Plus.

# Fitting lightning protection units

Depending upon the chosen site configuation, it may be necessary to fit two or more lightning protection units (LPUs). For more information, refer to Site installation diagrams on page 2-26.

To mount an LPU and connect it to the input and output drop cables, proceed as follows:

Procedure 5-15 Mount LPU and connect to GPS receiver

| 1 | Check the contents of the LPU box (Figure 2-9 or Figure 2-10).   |
|---|--|
| 2 | Mount the LPU (following manufacturer's instructions) at the required point.<br>Mount the LPU vertically with cable glands facing downwards.   |
| 3 | Prepare the input and output drop cable as described in Preparing the supported Superior Essex cable on page 5-8.                              |
| 4 | Connect the cable gland of the input and output drop cable to the LPU as described in Connecting the drop cable to an ODU or LPU on page 5-16. |

# 

If it is necessary to disconnect a CAT5e cable from an LPU, refer to Disconnecting the drop cable from an ODU or LPU on page 5-18.

# Grounding the installation

Install the equipment in accordance with Section 810 of the National Electric Code, ANSI/NFPA No.70-1984 or Section 54 of the National Electrical Code in the country of installation. These codes describe correct installation procedures for grounding the outdoor unit, mast, lead-in wire and discharge unit, size of grounding conductors and connection requirements for grounding electrodes. Motorola recommends that installation of the outdoor unit be contracted to a professional installer.

## Grounding the ODU

The Outdoor Unit (ODU) must be properly grounded to protect against power surges.

## Additional grounding points

If the ODU is installed on a metal mast or tower, the screen of the supported Superior Essex cable must be bonded to the tower at the top and bottom ends. Additional grounding at intermediate points of the cable may be required if the cable is longer than 15m (50 feet).

To ground the cable, follow the procedure described in Grounding the drop cable to a metal tower or mast on page 5-11.

# Connecting the PIDU to the ODU cable

Perform this task to connect the PIDU to the drop cable from the ODU.

The drop cable from the ODU is connected to the PIDU Plus by means of a concealed RJ45 socket. The RJ45 socket has been placed inside the PIDU Plus hinged cover to prevent the user from inadvertently plugging other equipment into the ODU RJ45 socket.

## 

Plugging other equipment into the ODU RJ45 socket may damage the equipment due to the non-standard techniques employed to inject DC power into the 1000BaseT connection between the PIDU Plus and the ODU. Plugging the ODU into other equipment may damage the ODU and/or the other equipment.

To connect the PIDU Plus port of the ODU to the drop cable, proceed as follows:

## UNDER DEVELOPMENT



#### Procedure 5-16 Connecting the ODU to the PIDU Plus

# Mounting the PIDU Plus

Mount the PIDU Plus on a wall or other suitable mounting surface, using the lugs provided. This prevents the unit from being knocked or kicked and can help maintain link availability. Ensure that the Recovery switch can be accessed when mounting the unit.

## 

Do not dress the PIDU cables too tightly, as this may make the connections unreliable. Figure 5-17 shoes the correct and incorrect ways to dress the cables.

Figure 5-17 Correct and incorrect PIDU cable dressing



The PIDU Plus is not waterproof and should be mounted away from sources of moisture. If mounted outdoors, the unit should be mounted in a rain proof enclosure, preferably ventilated.

## **Drip loop**

Fit a drip loop on the PIDU Plus to ODU cable to ensure that any moisture that runs down the cable into the cabinet or enclosure cannot enter the PIDU Plus. This is shown in Figure 5-18. The network connection and mains cable should be treated in the same way if there is a risk that they can carry moisture to the PIDU Plus.

Figure 5-18 PIDU Plus drip loop configuration



# 

It is possible for moisture to enter the cable due to damage to the outer protective layer. This moisture can track down the inside of the cable, filling up the drip loop and eventually finding its way into the PIDU Plus. To protect against this the outer protective layer of the cable can be opened up at the bottom of the drip loop to allow this moisture to escape. -----

# Installing E1 and T1

This section describes the installation and configuration of the E1/T1 interface.

The maximum cable length between the ODU and the customers terminating equipment is 200m (656 feet) for E1/T1.

# E1/T1 connection diagrams

The E1/T1 cable should be assembled as described in Cables and connectors on page 1-15. This procedure applies to the ODU termination, but it must be repeated for the customer equipment end of the cable when the cable is terminated with an RJ45.

## T568B color coding

The T568B color coding used in RJ45 E1/T1 cables is illustrated in Figure 5-19 and Figure 5-20. The telecoms connection pin outs are specified in Table 5-2.

Figure 5-19 RJ45 pin connection (T568B color coding)





## Figure 5-20 Cable connection diagram (T568B color coding)

 Table 5-2
 Telecoms connection pin out

| Telecoms | Connector Pinout Signal Name |
|----------|------------------------------|
| Pin 1    | E1T1A_TX-                    |
| Pin 2    | E1T1A_TX+                    |
| Pin 3    | E1T1A_RX-                    |
| Pin 4    | E1T1B_TX-                    |
| Pin 5    | E1T1B_TX+                    |
| Pin 6    | E1T1A_RX+                    |
| Pin 7    | E1T1B_RX-                    |
| Pin 8    | E1T1B_RX+                    |

## Connections at the ODU and patch panel

The E1/T1 connections at the ODU and patch panel are illustrated in Figure 5-21.



Figure 5-21 E1-T1 connections at the ODU and patch panel

## **Balancing signals**

The balancing of E1/T1 120 Ohm signals is illustrated in Figure 5-22.





E1 – 120 Ohm signal Balanced twisted pair

# Locating the E1/T1 port on the ODU

Looking at the back of the unit with the cable entry at the bottom, the PTP 600 Series E1/T1 connection is the first hole on the left (Figure 5-23) and is labeled E1/T1.

Figure 5-23 PIDU Plus and E1/T1 connection



# Connecting the ODU to the E1/T1 cable

Perform this task to connect the ODU to the E1/T1 cable. It is often easier to carry out this procedure on the ground or a suitable surface prior to mounting the ODU.

To prevent damage to the ODU while making or breaking the connection, ensure that power is removed from the system at the PIDU Plus.

To connect the E1/T1 port of the ODU to the E1/T1 cable, proceed as follows:

Procedure 5-17 Connect the E1/T1 cable to the ODU



# 

If it is necessary to disconnect the E1/T1 cable from the ODU, refer to Disconnecting the drop cable from an ODU or LPU on page 5-18.

# Routing the cable

After connecting the cable to the ODU it can be routed and secured using standard cable routing and securing techniques. When the cable is in place it can then be cut to the desired length.

## **Customer cable termination**

The two channels can be separated by means of a patch panel which may include Baluns for transmission over 75 Ohm co-axial unbalanced lines. Such equipment should conform to the requirements of C.C.I.T.T. G703. An example of a Balun is shown below. It allows the transmit and receive data carried over a 75 Ohm cable to be converted to a balanced form for transmission over a 120 Ohm signal balanced twisted pair.

Figure 5-24 Example of a Balun



# Lightning protection and E1/T1

Lightning protection on page 2-18 contains the basic requirements for the Motorola PTP 600 Series deployment. For E1/T1, an extra grounding cable is supplied to connect the other PTP-LPU to the ODU ground. This section details the additional requirements for the deployment of E1/T1.

## Recommended components for E1/T1 installation

For a description of Zone A and Zone B refer to Lightning protection zones on page 2-19.

| Component  | Zone A    | Zone B    |
|--|-----------|-----------|
| Earth ODU  | Mandatory | Mandatory |
| Screen Cable   | Mandatory | Mandatory |
| Lightning Protection Unit PTP LPU at ODU               | Mandatory | Mandatory |
| Earth Cable at Building Entry                          | Mandatory | Mandatory |
| Lightning Protection Unit PTP LPU at Building<br>Entry | Mandatory | Mandatory |

#### Table 5-3 Protection requirements

Refer to Site installation diagrams on page 2-26 to see how the components of PTP 600 sites with E1/T1 are installed and connected. This section also lists the recommended components for each type of installation.

# Testing the E1/T1 installation

If you have opted to fit a Lightning Protection Unit, it should be tested as described in LPU installation wiring on page 2-24.

Test the telecoms links by performing loopback connections as described in Configuring the telecoms circuits on page 6-49.

## **Pre-power testing**

Before connecting your E1/T1 source, check the following resistances:

- Check the cable resistance between pins 3 & 6 (Green/White & Green) and 7 & 8 (Brown/White & Brown). Check against Table 5-4 column 2.
- Check the cable resistance between pins 1 & 2 (Orange/White & Orange) and 4 & 5 (Blue & Blue/White). Check against Table 5-4 column 3.

| CAT-5 Length (Meters) | Resistance between pins | Resistance between pins |
|-----------------------|-------------------------|-------------------------|
|                       | 3 & 6 and pins 7 & 8    | 1 & 2 and pins 4 & 5    |
|                       | (ohms)                  | (ohms)                  |
| 0                     | 0.8                     | 1.3                     |
| 10                    | 2.5                     | 3.0                     |
| 20                    | 4.2                     | 4.7                     |
| 30                    | 5.9                     | 6.4                     |
| 40                    | 7.6                     | 8.2                     |
| 50                    | 9.3                     | 9.8                     |
| 60                    | 11.0                    | 11.5                    |
| 70                    | 12.7                    | 13.2                    |
| 80                    | 14.4                    | 14.9                    |
| 90                    | 16.1                    | 18.2                    |
| 100                   | 17.8                    | 18.3                    |

 Table 5-4
 Resistance referenced to the E1/T1 source

# Establishing a radio link

This section describes how to establish a radio link between the two units forming the bridge and align the units for the best signal strength.

Before performing these tasks, connect the PIDU Plus to the network, power up the unit and open the web interface. For more information, refer to:

- Powering up and connecting the PIDU Plus on page 5-3.
- Opening the web interface on page 5-4.

# Using the ODU installation tones

The PTP 600 ODU emits audible tones during installation to assist with alignment. The pitch of the alignment tone is proportional to the received power of the wireless signals. Adjust the alignment of the unit in both azimuth and elevation until the highest pitch tone is achieved. The tones and their meanings are described in Table 5-5. In each of the states detailed in the table, align the unit to give the highest pitch tone.

| State Name             | Tone Description         | State Description   | Pitch Indication |
|------------------------|--------------------------|---|------------------|
| Free Channel<br>Search | Regular beep             | Executing band scan   | N/A              |
| Scanning               | Slow broken tone         | Not demodulating the wanted signal  | Rx Power         |
| Synchronized           | Fast broken tone         | Demodulating the wanted signal  | Rx Power         |
| Registered             | Solid tone               | Both Master and Slave<br>units exchanging Radio<br>layer MAC management<br>messages | Rx Power         |
| Alarm                  | Fast broken dual<br>tone | A fatal error has occurred.   |                  |

Table 5-5 ODU installation tones

The term 'wanted signal' refers to that of the peer unit being installed.

phn-0896\_009v003 Feb 2010

# 

If, when in the Synchronized or Registered state, the tone varies wildly, there may be interference or a fast fading link. Installing in this situation may not give a reliable link. Investigate the cause of the problem.

# Aligning the units

To align the units, proceed as follows:

Procedure 5-18 Align Master and Slave

| 1 | Adjust the elevation and azimuth of the Master unit to achieve an approximate visual alignment with the site of the Slave unit.       |
|---|---|
| 2 | Adjust the elevation and azimuth of the Slave unit to achieve an approximate visual alignment with the site of the Master unit.       |
| 3 | Without moving the Master unit, adjust the elevation and azimuth of the Slave<br>unit to achieve the highest pitch installation tone. |
| 4 | Without moving the Slave unit, adjust the elevation and azimuth of the Master<br>unit to achieve the highest pitch installation tone. |
| 5 | Repeat steps 3 and 4 as necessary to fine tune the alignment.   |
|   | _   |

## 

To achieve best results, make small incremental changes to elevation and azimuth.

There is a graphical installation screen (see Graphical install on page 6-75) available in the web interface that displays the state of the link during the alignment process (up = green, down = red).

# Behaviour during alignment

When the units are powered up and alignment begins, the following behavior may be observed:

## Band scan

When first started up and from time to time, the Master unit will carry out a band scan to determine which channels are not in use. During this time, between 10 and 15 seconds, the Master unit will not transmit and as a consequence of this neither will the Slave unit. During this time the installation tone on the master unit will drop back to the band scan state, and the Slave unit will drop back to the Scanning state with the pitch of the tone set to the background noise level. Alignment of the unit should cease during this time.

## **Radar detection**

If the unit is operating where mandatory radar avoidance algorithms are implemented, the ranging behaviour for the PTP 600 Series may be affected. The Master has to monitor the initially chosen channel for 60 seconds to make sure it is clear of radar signals before transmitting. If a radar is detected during any of the installation phases, a further compulsory 60 seconds channel scan will take place as the master unit attempts to locate a new channel that is free of radar interference.

## Ranging

The Master unit can take up to 60 seconds in 0-40 km (0-25 miles) mode, 90 seconds in 0-130 km (0-81 miles) mode and 120 seconds in 0-200 km (0-124 miles) mode to determine the range of the link being installed. The Master unit will remain in the Scanning state until the range of the link has been established. The Master unit will only move to the Synchronized state when the range of the link has been established.

The Slave unit does not have a ranging process. The slave unit will change to the Synchronized state as soon as the wanted signal is demodulated.

## **Retrying same channel**

If, at the end of the ranging period, the Registered state is not achieved due to interference or other reasons, the Master unit will retry twice more on the same channel before moving to another available channel. Should this occur it might take a number of minutes to establish a link in the Registered state.

# Adjusting power settings

The transmit power levels of the installed units must be adjusted to ensure they are not too high. Excessive power levels may cause saturation of the receivers or false radar detection (in radar enabled regions), leading to degradation of link performance and link failure.

To adjust power levels, proceed as follows:

#### Procedure 5-19 Adjust power levels

| 1 | Consult the report generated by the LINKPlanner tool and note the Transmit power recommended levels.   |
|---|--|
| 2 | Set the local unit power equal to the "LOCAL - Max Transmit Power setting while pointing" value from the LINKPlanner report.   |
| 3 | Set the remote unit power equal to the "REMOTE - Max Transmit Power setting while pointing" value from the LINKPlanner report.   |
| 4 | Access each unit separately.   |
| 5 | Align the units.   |
| 6 | Repeat Step 2 and 3 using the values "LOCAL - Max Transmit Power setting before disarm" and "REMOTE - Max Transmit Power setting before disarm" , if different than the corresponding "while pointing" values. |
| 7 | Reboot the local unit then reboot the remote unit.   |
| 8 | Disarm the units.  |

# **Disarm on completion**

When the alignment process is complete, disarm both units in the link, as described in Installation pages on page 6-51. This is necessary in order to:

- Turn off the audible alignment aid (see Disarm installationon page 6-72)
- Enable Adaptive Modulation
- Fully enable Advanced Spectrum Management with i-DFS
- Clear unwanted installation information from the various systems statistics
- Store the link range for fast link acquisition on link drop
- Enable higher data rates

# **NOTE**

After 24 hours, the units will be disarmed automatically, provided that they are armed and that the link is up.

# **Chapter 6 Operation**

This chapter describes the PTP 600 web user interface and provides instructions for operators.

The following topics are described in this chapter:

- Web-based management on page 6-2
- Configuring the PTP 600 on page 6-19
- Installation pages on page 6-51
- Upgrading the PTP 600 on page 6-77
- Managing security on page 6-90
- Managing faults on page 6-112
- Managing performance on page 6-119
- Properties on page 6-131
- Reboot on page 6-132

# 

The web pages are best viewed using a screen resolution of at least 1024 x 768 pixels on a PC using Microsoft Internet Explorer Version 6 or 7.

The web pages have also been tested with Firefox 2.0.0.12. Other browsers have not been tested.

.....

# Web-based management

# Menu navigation bar

The navigation bar on the left hand side of the web page is used to move between the various management pages. The currently selected page is always highlighted with a light blue background. The menu is hierarchical. Selecting a menu item which has associated submenu options will automatically display all sub options. A sample web page with the navigation menu is shown in Figure 6-1.

#### Figure 6-1 Menu navigation bar



The web user interface menu has three main options.

- **Home:** This presents to the operator a high level summary of the PTP 600 Series point-to-point wireless link.
- **Status:** This presents a more detailed set of system parameters describing the performance of the wireless link together with other key system performance metrics.
- **System Administration**: This section is password protected and allows the system administrator to perform all the day-to-day administrative procedures, for example software upgrade and configuration changes.

# Home (system summary)

The home page for the PTP 600 Series (Figure 6-2) displays a high level summary of the status of the wireless link and associated equipment.

Figure 6-2 System Summary page

| Attributes             | Value                | Units |
|------------------------|----------------------|-------|
| Wireless Link Status   | Up                   |       |
| Link Name              | Tower of London      |       |
| Elapsed Time Indicator | 00:08:13             |       |
| System Clock           | 08-Nov-2006 10:42:08 |       |

The home page normally displays four key system attributes:

#### **Wireless Link Status**

The Wireless Link Status attribute displays the current status of the PTP 600 Series wireless link. A state of 'Up' on a green background indicates that a point-to-point link is established. A state of 'Down' on a red background indicates that the wireless link is not established. If the link is down for an unknown reason the system administrator should first consult the status web page for a more detailed summary of up to date system diagnostics.

## Link Name

The link name attribute is a name and/or handle allocated by the system administrator to aid the identification of the unit, network or building.

## **Elapsed Time Indicator**

The elapsed time indicator attribute presents the total time in days, hours, minutes and seconds since the last system restart. The system can restart for several reasons, for example, commanded reboot from the system reboot webpage, or a power cycle of the equipment.

## **System Clock**

If SNTP (Simple Network Time Protocol) is enabled, or the clock has been set, then a system clock attribute is displayed giving the date and time of the last page refresh. Section SNTP (Simple Network Time Protocol) on page 6-117 explains how to enable SNTP and Section Setting the clock on page 6-118 explains how to set the clock.

## Home page alarm display

The home page is also used to display all outstanding major system alarms. Whenever system alarms are asserted, a yellow warning triangle is displayed on web page navigation bar. The warning triangle will be visible from all web pages. Clicking the warning triangle will cause the web page to jump back to the system homepage. Figure 6-3 shows a sample alarm screen.

Figure 6-3 Alarm warning triangle

|  | POINT-TO- POINT W      | IRELESS SOLUTIONS    | 1     |  |  |  |  |
|--|------------------------|----------------------|-------|--|--|--|--|
|  | System Summary         |                      |       |  |  |  |  |
|  | Attributes             | Value                | Units |  |  |  |  |
|  | Wireless Link Status   | Up                   |       |  |  |  |  |
|  | Link Name              | Tower of London      |       |  |  |  |  |
|  | Elapsed Time Indicator | 00:01:03             | -     |  |  |  |  |
|  | System Clock           | 09-Nov-2006 17:46:31 |       |  |  |  |  |
| Home   | Install Arm State      | Armed                |       |  |  |  |  |
| <ul> <li>Status</li> <li>System Administration</li> <li>Configuration</li> <li>Statistics</li> <li>Installation Wizard</li> <li>Software Upgrade</li> <li>Spectrum Management</li> <li>Remote Management</li> <li>Diagnostics Plotter</li> <li>Change Password</li> <li>License Key</li> <li>Properties</li> <li>Reboot</li> </ul> |                        |                      |       |  |  |  |  |

## System alarms

The following system alarms are defined:

#### **Region code**

The region code prohibits the wireless unit from operating outside the regulated limits. An invalid region code indicates a corrupted license key. Note that a change of state may generate an SNMP trap and/or SMTP email alert.

## **Install Status**

A non-OK value indicates that signaling was received with the wrong MAC address. Note that it is very unusual to detect this, because units with wrongly configured Target MAC Address will normally fail to establish a wireless link. However, rare circumstances may establish a partial wireless link and detect this situation. NB: A non-OK value on start-up, or a change of value during operation, may generate an SNMP trap and/or SMTP email alert.

#### **Install Arm State**

This alarm warns when a wireless unit is in installation mode. After installation the wireless unit should be disarmed. This will increase the wireless link's data-carrying capacity and stop the installation tone generator. The wireless link is disarmed from the 'Installation' process see Disarm installation on page 6-72. A change of state may generate an SNMP trap and/or SMTP email alert.

## **Unit Out Of Calibration**

The unit is out of calibration and must be returned to the factory using the RMA process for re-calibration.

## **Incompatible Region Codes**

The PTP 600 Series uses region codes to comply with local regulatory requirements governing the transmission of wireless signals in the frequency bands in which it operates. Region codes can only be changed by obtaining a new PTP 600 Series license key. If this alarm is encountered, the appropriate license keys from the country of operation should be obtained from your distributor. Applying license keys containing the same region codes to both ends of the link will remove the alarm. A change of state may generate an SNMP trap and/or SMTP email alert.

#### **Incompatible Master and Slave**

A non-zero value indicates that the master and slave ends of the wireless link are different hardware products, or have different software versions. Note that it is very unusual to detect this because incompatible units will normally fail to establish a wireless link. However, some combinations may establish a partial wireless link and detect this situation. Note that a non-zero value may generate an SNMP trap and/or SMTP email alert.

#### **Ethernet Configuration Mismatch**

The detection of Ethernet fragments (runt packets) when the link is in full duplex is an indication of an auto-negotiation or forced configuration mismatch. Note that a change of state may generate an SNMP trap and/or SMTP email alert.

#### **No Wireless Channel Available**

Spectrum Management was unable to locate a suitable wireless channel to operate on. Note that a change of state may generate an SNMP trap and/or SMTP email alert.

#### **SNTP Synchronization failed**

This warning indicates that SNTP has been enabled but that the unit is unable to synchronize with the specified SNTP server. Section SNTP (Simple Network Time Protocol) on page 6-117 explains how to configure SNTP. Note that a change of state may generate an SNMP trap and/or SMTP email alert.

#### Wireless Link Disabled Warning

This warning is displayed if the Wireless link has been administratively disabled via the SNMP Interface (see Managing faults on page 6-112). The Wireless Interface MIB-II ifAdminStatus attribute has been set to DOWN. To enable the Ethernet interface, set the ifAdminStatus attribute to UP. Note that a change of state may generate an SNMP trap and/or SMTP email alert.

#### **Ethernet Link Disabled Warning**

This warning is displayed if the Ethernet link has been administratively disabled via the SNMP Interface (see Managing faults on page 6-112). The Ethernet Interface MIB-II ifAdminStatus attribute has been set to DOWN. To enable the Ethernet interface, set the ifAdminStatus attribute to UP. Note that a change of state may generate an SNMP trap and/or SMTP email alert.

#### **Ethernet Link Status**

Current status of the Ethernet link. If there are any problems with the Ethernet interface, this alarm will be asserted. This alarm will most likely be seen if the unit has no Ethernet cable plugged into its Ethernet socket. Note that a change of state may generate an SNMP trap and/or SMTP email alert.

UNDER DEVELOPMENT

#### **Fiber Link Status**

If the fiber link is not OK, there are two possible causes: Either the fiber link has been installed but disabled (because the license key does not include fiber support), or the link could not be established even though an optical carrier was detected (due perhaps to a broken TX fiber, or the link is disabled at the fiber link partner). Note that a change of status may generate an SNMP trap and/or SMTP email alert.

#### **Telecoms Channel A/B Status**

**Alarm Condition** Meaning No Signal (Local) There is no telecoms signal present at the connection to the ODU at the local end. No Signal (Remote) There is an absence of telecoms data across the wireless link. No Signal (Local and The above two alarm conditions occur concurrently. Remote) **Remote Timing** There is insufficient wireless capacity available to carry telecoms data. Under these conditions telecoms timing information is still sent to keep the telecoms clocks synchronized. No Signal (Local) Indicates both no local signal and remote timing. and Remote Timing

Indicates one of the following alarm conditions on a telecoms channel:

In remote timing mode the ODU will transmit an Alarm Indication Signal (AIS), consisting of all-ones, from the associated telecoms interface. A change of state may generate an SNMP trap and/or SMTP email alert.

See Telecoms interface on page 6-57 for a description of the Telecoms Interface.

## **Telecoms Channel A/B Loopback**

The loopback status of telecoms channel A and B. These are intended for installation testing and should be set to 'None' for normal operation. The wire connections to a unit can be tested by applying a 'Copper' loopback to the local unit. The wireless connection to the remote unit can be tested by applying a 'Wireless' loopback to the remote unit with no loopback on the local unit.

A change of state may generate an SNMP trap and/or SMTP email alert. The loopback can be disabled from the telecoms configuration sub menu (see Configuring the telecoms circuits on page 6-49).

See Telecoms interface on page 6-57 for a description of the Telecoms Interface.

#### **TDD Synchronization Alarm**

Indicates the current status of the TDD Synchronization (OK, Timing System Failure, Not Synchronized). Note that a change of state may generate an SNMP trap and/or SMTP email alert.

#### **Link Mode Optimization Mismatch**

The Master and Slave ODUs are configured to use different link mode optimization methods (one is set to IP and the other TDM).

## System status

The status page (Figure 6-4) gives the system administrator a detailed view of the operation of the PTP 600 Series from both the wireless and network perspectives.

| System Status -   | Master                |       |                                |                             |          |          |         |       |
|---|-----------------------|-------|--------------------------------|-----------------------------|----------|----------|---------|-------|
| Equipment   |                       |       | Wireless                       |                             |          |          |         |       |
| Attributes  | Value                 | Units | Attributes                     | Value                       |          |          |         | Units |
| Link Name   |                       |       | Wireless Link Status           | Up                          |          |          |         |       |
| Site Name   |                       |       | Maximum Transmit Power         | 20                          |          |          |         | dBm   |
| Software Version  | 45600-B1710+ wdog     |       | Remote Maximum Transmit Power  | 12                          |          |          |         | dBm   |
| Hardware Version  | D06-R01-C             |       | Transmit Power                 | 20.0,                       | 19.9,    | -15.0,   | 20.0    | dBm   |
| Region Code   | Region Code 23        |       | Receive Power                  | -43.1,                      | -49.7,   | -110.0,  | -49.2   | dBm   |
| Elapsed Time Indicator  | 00:51:15              |       | Vector Error                   | 7.2,                        | -29.0,   | -36.8,   | -29.5   | dB    |
| Ethernet / Internet   |                       |       | Link Loss                      | 103.6,                      | 98.8,    | 0.0,     | 100.2   | dB    |
| Ethernet Link Status  | Copper Link Up        |       | Transmit Data Rate             | 150.01,                     | 147.55,  | 0.00,    | 150.01  | Mbps  |
| Ethernet Speed And Duplex   | 1000 Mbps Full Duplex |       | Receive Data Rate              | 150.01,                     | 147.86,  | 0.00,    | 150.01  | Mbps  |
| Group ID  | 82                    |       | Link Capacity                  | 300.02                      |          |          |         | Mbps  |
| MAC Address   | 00:04:56:88:00:12     |       | Transmit Modulation Mode       | 256QAM 0.81 (Dual) (30 MHz) |          |          |         |       |
| Remote MAC Address  | 00:04:56:88:00:48     |       | Receive Modulation Mode        | 256QAM 0.81 (Dual) (30 MHz) |          |          |         |       |
| Remote IP Address   | <u>1.1.100.12</u>     |       | Dual Payload                   | Enabled                     |          |          |         |       |
| Telecoms  |                       |       | Link Symmetry                  | 1 to 1                      |          |          |         |       |
| Channel A   | Disabled              |       | Receive Modulation Mode Detail | Running .                   | At Maxim | ım Recei | ve Mode |       |
| Channel B   | Disabled              |       | Range                          | 0.1                         |          |          |         | km    |
| TDD Synchronization   |                       |       |                                |                             |          |          |         |       |
| TDD Synchronization Inactive  | TDD Sync Disabled     |       |                                |                             |          |          |         |       |
| Status Page Refresh Period         3600         Seconds         Update Page Refresh Period         Reset form |                       |       |                                |                             |          |          |         |       |

Figure 6-4 System Status page

The page is subdivided into five categories:

- **Equipment**: This contains the unit's inventory and identification information.
- **Wireless**: This presents the key wireless metrics, which are displayed as a series of measurements.
- Ethernet/Internet: This describes the unit's network identity and connectivity.
- **Telecoms**: This describes the unit's E1/T1 telecoms interface parameters.
- **TDD Synchronization**: This shows the status of TDD synchronization.

The status page can be configured to refresh itself at an operator defined rate (if the user is logged in as system administrator). The refresh period defaults to 3600 seconds and can easily be changed to refresh at any period between 2 seconds and 3600 seconds. Pressing the 'Update Page Refresh Period' button causes a new page refresh period to be adopted by the system. The page refresh mechanism uses a HTML Meta refresh command. Therefore the refresh is always initiated by the local browser and not by the PTP 600 Series at this interval.

The two PTP 600 Series units are arranged in a master and slave relationship. The roles of the units in this relationship are displayed in the page title. The master unit will always have the title '- Master', and the slave will always have '- Slave' appended to the 'Systems Status' page title.

The following attributes are displayed on the status page:

#### Link Name

The link name is allocated by the system administrator and is used to identify the equipment on the network. The link name attribute is limited to a maximum size of 63 ASCII characters.

## Site Name

The site name is allocated by the system administrator and can be used as a generic scratch pad to describe the location of the equipment or any other equipment related notes. The site name attribute is limited to a maximum size of 63 ASCII characters.

#### **Software Version**

The attribute describes the version of software installed on the equipment. The format of the attributes is *FFSSS*-XX-*YY* where *FF* is the frequency variant (2.5, 4.5, 5.4, 5.8 or 5.9 GHz), *SSS* is the System Release, *XX* is the major release version and *YY* is the minor release version.

## **Hardware Version**

The hardware version attribute contains all the combined hardware version information. The attribute is formatted as DXX-RYY-Z where DXX contain the version of the digital card, RYY contains the version of the RF (radio frequency) card and Z describes the antenna type which can be I (integrated) or C (connectorized).

## **Region Code**

The region code is used by the system to constrain the wireless to operate within regulatory regime of the particular country. The region code is encoded in the product license key. If the operator wishes to change region code, a new license key must be obtained from Motorola or the local point-to-point distributor or system integrator.
## **Elapsed Time Indicator**

The elapsed time indicator attribute presents the total time in years, days, hours, minutes and seconds since the last system restart. The system can restart for several reasons, for example commanded reboot from the system reboot web page, or a power cycle of the equipment.

### **Ethernet Link Status:**

This indicates the current status of the Ethernet link. A state of 'Up' with a green background indicates that an Ethernet link is established. A state of 'Down' with a red background indicates that the Ethernet link is not established.

## **Ethernet Speed and Duplex**

The negotiated speed and duplex setting of the Ethernet interface. The speed setting is specified in Mbps.

Full Duplex data transmission means that data can be transmitted in both directions on a signal carrier at the same time. For example, on a local area network with a technology that has full duplex transmission; one workstation can be sending data on the line while another workstation is receiving data.

Half Duplex data transmission means that data can be transmitted in both directions on a signal carrier, but not at the same time. For example, on a local area network using a technology that has half duplex transmission, one workstation can send data on the line and then immediately receive data on the line from the same direction in which data was just transmitted.

## **Remote IP Address**

Hyperlink to the other side of the Link. The IP address of the peer link is displayed if the Link is UP, otherwise "unavailable" is displayed.

#### **Telecoms Channel A and B**

Indicate the current status of the telecoms channels. Channels which are disabled during installation are marked as such. Correctly operating channels display "Up" on a green background, but alarm conditions (described in Section Home page alarm display on page 6-6) have a red background.

The Telecoms Latency value, displayed in microseconds, is determined when the wireless link starts and will remain the same for a given wireless configuration. Section Telecoms circuits on page 1-36 describes methods for reducing telecoms latency on links which support high data rate modulation modes.

Under normal circumstances the unit will freely transition between modulation modes to suit the wireless conditions. The "Single Payload Lock" indicates that the ODU will prevent transitions from Single Payload modes to the higher Dual Payload modes in order to avoid loss of telecoms data. This field appears where such a transition would pass through modes which cannot carry telecoms data. This may be because, in order to control latency, the lowest modulation mode has been set to a higher Single Payload mode.

In the absence of the Single Payload Lock the wireless will transition to the faster Dual Payload modes as soon as the conditions are appropriate. With the lock enabled, the wireless will dwell in slower Single Payload modes whenever there are operational telecoms links (operational links are shown as "Up" in the telecoms channel field described above). When the lock is actively preventing transitions, the value displayed changes from "Enabled" to "Applied".

## **TDD Synchronization**

Displays the TDD Synchronization status for the link. For more information, refer to TDD synchronization status on page 6-16.

## **Refresh Page Period**

The Status page refreshes automatically according to the setting entered here (in seconds). This attribute is only displayed when the user is logged on as System Administrator.

## Wireless Link Status

As the attribute name suggests it displays the current status of the wireless link. A state of 'Up' on a green background indicates that a point-to-point link is established. A state of 'Down' on a red background indicates that the wireless link is not established.

## **Maximum Transmit Power**

The maximum transmit power that the local wireless unit is permitted to use to sustain a link.

## **Remote Maximum Transmit Power**

The maximum transmit power that the remote wireless unit is permitted to use to sustain a link.

#### **Transmit Power**

Transmit power histogram is expressed in dBm and presented as: max, mean, min, and latest. The max, min and latest are true instantaneous measurements; the mean is the mean of a set of one second means. See Histogram data on page 6-18.

#### **Receive Power**

Receive power histogram is expressed in dBm and presented as: max, mean, min, and latest. The max, min and latest are true instantaneous measurements; the mean is the mean of a set of one second means. See Histogram data on page 6-18.

#### **Vector Error**

The vector error measurement compares the received signal's In phase / Quadrature (IQ) modulation characteristics to an ideal signal to determine the composite error vector magnitude. The results are stored in an histogram and expressed in dB and presented as: max, mean, min and latest. The max, min and latest are true instantaneous measurements; the mean is the mean of a set of one second means. The expected range for Vector Error would be approximately -2dB (NLOS link operating at sensitivity limit on BPSK 0.67) to -33dB (short LOS link running 256 QAM 0.83). See Histogram data on page 6-18.

#### Link Loss

The link loss is the total attenuation of the wireless signal between the two point-to-point units. See Histogram data on page 6-18.

The link loss calculation presented below:

### Equation 6-1 Link loss

$$P_{ll} = P_{T_{y}} - P_{R_{y}} + g_{T_{y}} + g_{R_{y}}$$

| Where                 | is   |
|-----------------------|--|
| $P_{ll}$              | Link Loss (dB)   |
| $P_{T_x}$             | Transmit power of the remote wireless unit (dBm)   |
| $P_{R_x}$             | Received signal power at the local unit (dBm)  |
| $g_{T_x}$ , $g_{R_x}$ | Antenna gain at the remote and local<br>units respectively (dBi). The antenna<br>gain of the PTP 600 Series (23.5 dBi)<br>is used unless one or both of the units<br>is a Connectorized version. |

## UNDER DEVELOPMENT

### **Transmit Data Rate**

The data rate in the transmit direction, expressed in Mbps and presented as: max, mean, min, and latest in an histogram format. The max, min and latest are true instantaneous measurements; the mean is the mean of a set of one second means. Expected data rates can be found in Data rate calculations on page 4-99.

### **Receive Data Rate**

The data rate in the receive direction, expressed in Mbps and presented as: max, mean, min, and latest in an histogram format. The max, min and latest are true instantaneous measurements; the mean is the mean of a set of one second means. Expected data rates can be found in Data rate calculations on page 4-99.

### **Link Capacity**

The maximum aggregate data rate capacity available for user traffic, assuming the units have been connected using Gigabit Ethernet. The link capacity is variable and depends of the prevailing wireless conditions as well as the distance (range) between the two wireless units.

### **Transmit Modulation Mode**

The modulation mode currently being used on the transmit channel. A list of all the modulation modes can be found in Data rate calculations on page 4-99, where data rate calculations plots are given for each available modulation mode.

## **Receive Modulation Mode**

The modulation mode currently being used on the receive channel. A list of all the modulation modes can be found in Data rate calculations on page 4-99, where data rate calculations plots are given for each available modulation mode.

#### Link Symmetry

A ratio that expresses the division between transmit and receive time in the TDD frame. The first number in the ratio represents the time allowed for the transmit direction and the second number represents the time allowed for the receive direction.

# 

Link Symmetry is configured at the master ODU only. The appropriate matching Link Symmetry is set at the slave ODU automatically. For example, if Link Symmetry is configured as "2 to 1" at the master ODU, then the slave ODU will be set automatically as "1 to 2". In this example, the master-slave direction has double the capacity of the slave-master direction.

### **Receive Modulation Mode Detail**

This supplies the user with information regarding the receive modulation mode in use. Possible values are:

- "Running at maximum receive mode"
- "Running at user-configured Max Modulation Mode"
- "Restricted due to byte errors on the wireless link or local Ethernet Tx Fifo Drops"
- "Restricted because a DFS channel change is in progress"
- "Restricted due to telecoms acquisition mode"
- "Restricted due to the low Ethernet link speed"
- "Limited by the wireless conditions"

#### Range

The range between the PTP 600 Series ODUs. This is displayed in km by default, but can be changed to miles by updating the 'Distance Units' attribute to imperial, as described in Properties on page 6-131.

## **TDD synchronization status**

The Status Page displays the TDD Synchronization status for the link.

If TDD Synchronization is not enabled, the Attribute is set to "TDD Synchronization Inactive" and the Value is set to "Timing System Not Connected".

If TDD Synchronization is enabled and the installation is rebooted, the Attribute is set to "TDD Synchronization Status" and the Value is set to one of the following:

- Locked: (Figure 6-5)
- Holdover:
- Holdover (Not Connected)
- Acquiring Lock
- No Timing Reference
- Timing System Not Connected (Figure 6-6)
- Initialising

| System Status - Master     |                      |                                |           |           |            |       |       |
|----------------------------|----------------------|--------------------------------|-----------|-----------|------------|-------|-------|
| Equipment                  |                      | Wireless                       |           |           |            |       |       |
| Attributes                 | Value Units          | Attributes                     | Value     |           |            |       | Units |
| Link Name                  |                      | Wireless Link Status           | Up        |           |            |       |       |
| Link Location              |                      | Maximum Transmit Power         | 15        |           |            |       | dBm   |
| Software Version           | 25600-B1236+ wdog    | Remote Maximum Transmit Power  | 15        |           |            |       | dBm   |
| Hardware Version           | D05-R00-C            | Transmit Power                 | 15.0,     | 15.0,     | 15.0,      | 15.0  | dBm   |
| Region Code                | Region Code 16       | Receive Power                  | -45.2,    | -45.2,    | -45.4,     | -45.3 | dBm   |
| Elapsed Time Indicator     | 4 Days 01:28:25      | Vector Error                   | -32.9,    | -35.8,    | -38.7,     | -36.2 | dB    |
| Ethernet / Internet        |                      | Link Loss                      | 96.3,     | 96.2,     | 96.2,      | 96.2  | dB    |
| Ethernet Link Status       | Copper Link Up       | Transmit Data Rate             | 18.46,    | 18.46,    | 18.46,     | 18.46 | Mbps  |
| Ethernet Speed And Duplex  | 100 Mbps Full Duplex | Receive Data Rate              | 18.46,    | 18.46,    | 18.46,     | 18.46 | Mbps  |
| MAC Address                | 00:04:56:80:2e:80    | Link Capacity                  | 36.92     |           |            |       | Mbps  |
| Remote IP Address          | <u>10.10.10.10</u>   | Transmit Modulation Mode       | 256QAM (  | ).81 (Dua | l) (5 MHz) |       |       |
| Telecoms                   |                      | Receive Modulation Mode        | 256QAM (  | ).81 (Dua | l) (5 MHz) |       |       |
| Channel A                  | Disabled             | Receive Modulation Mode Detail | Running A | t Maximu  | m Receive  | Mode  |       |
| Channel B                  | Disabled             | Range                          | 1.0       |           |            |       | km    |
| TDD Syncronization         |                      |                                |           |           |            |       |       |
| TDD Synchronization Status | Locked               |                                |           |           |            |       |       |

Figure 6-5 Status page - TDD enabled and synchronized

| System Status - Master     |                             |       |                                |           |           |            |       |       |
|----------------------------|-----------------------------|-------|--------------------------------|-----------|-----------|------------|-------|-------|
| Equipment                  |                             |       | Wireless                       |           |           |            |       |       |
| Attributes                 | Value                       | Units | Attributes                     | Value     |           |            |       | Units |
| Link Name                  |                             |       | Wireless Link Status           | Up        |           |            |       |       |
| Link Location              |                             |       | Maximum Transmit Power         | 15        |           |            |       | dBm   |
| Software Version           | 25600-B1236+ wdog           |       | Remote Maximum Transmit Power  | 15        |           |            |       | dBm   |
| Hardware Version           | D05-R00-C                   |       | Transmit Power                 | 15.0,     | 15.0,     | 15.0,      | 15.0  | dBm   |
| Region Code                | Region Code 16              |       | Receive Power                  | -45.2,    | -45.2,    | -45.4,     | -45.2 | dBm   |
| Elapsed Time Indicator     | 4 Days 01:30:26             |       | Vector Error                   | -32.9,    | -35.8,    | -38.7,     | -35.7 | dB    |
| Ethernet / Internet        |                             |       | Link Loss                      | 96.3,     | 96.2,     | 96.2,      | 96.2  | dB    |
| Ethernet Link Status       | Copper Link Up              |       | Transmit Data Rate             | 18.46,    | 18.46,    | 18.46,     | 18.46 | Mbps  |
| Ethernet Speed And Duplex  | 100 Mbps Full Duplex        |       | Receive Data Rate              | 18.46,    | 18.46,    | 18.46,     | 18.46 | Mbps  |
| MAC Address                | 00:04:56:80:2e:80           |       | Link Capacity                  | 36.92     |           |            |       | Mbps  |
| Remote IP Address          | 10.10.10.10                 |       | Transmit Modulation Mode       | 256QAM (  | 0.81 (Dua | l) (5 MHz) |       |       |
| Telecoms                   |                             |       | Receive Modulation Mode        | 256QAM (  | 0.81 (Dua | l) (5 MHz) |       |       |
| Channel A                  | Disabled                    |       | Link Symmetry                  | 1 to 1    |           |            |       |       |
| Channel B                  | Disabled                    |       | Receive Modulation Mode Detail | Running A | At Maximu | m Receive  | Mode  |       |
| TDD Syncronization         |                             |       | Range                          | 0.1       |           |            |       | km    |
| TDD Synchronization Status | Timing System Not Connected |       |                                |           |           |            |       |       |

## Histogram data

The histogram is calculated over a one hour period. If the equipment has been running for less than one hour, then the histogram is calculated over the current elapsed time. The data used to compute the histogram statistics can be downloaded in an ASCII comma separated value (CSV) format via the diagnostics CSV Download page, see CSV download on page 6-130.

## System administration

Figure 6-7 shows the system administration login page. By default a system administrator password is not set.

Figure 6-7 System administration login page

|                | MOTOROLA POINT-TO-POINT                | WIRELESS SOLUTIONS |
|----------------|--|--------------------|
| Please login t | o gain access to the PTP wireless unit |                    |
| Password:      |  |                    |
|                | Login                                  |                    |

The menu options that are available to the system administrator are:

- Configuration
- Statistics
- Installation
- Software Upgrade
- Spectrum Management
- Remote management
- Diagnostics Plotter
- Change Password
- License Key
- Properties
- Reboot

# Configuring the PTP 600

The configuration of the PTP 600 Series is organized into the following sections:

- System configuration
- LAN configuration
- QoS Configuration
- Telecoms Configuration
- Save and Restore

The general configuration allows modification of high level administrative (descriptive) attributes and high level wireless configuration.

The LAN configuration sub menu allows the system administrator to modify the Ethernet and IP configuration of the PTP 600 Series.

The telecoms submenu displays the current status of the telecoms interface and allows the configuration of interface loopbacks.

The save and restore submenu allows the system administrator to backup and restore the bridge configuration. It is recommended after a unit has been successfully installed; a copy of the active configuration is taken and archived by the system administrator.

## System configuration

The system configuration page (Figure 6-8) is used by the system administrator to configure the PTP 600 Series's high level administrative (descriptive) attributes and high level wireless configuration.

| System Configuration                   | System Configuration  |       |  |  |  |  |
|--|---|-------|--|--|--|--|
| This page controls the day to day cont | This page controls the day to day configuration of the PTP wireless unit. |       |  |  |  |  |
| Equipment                              |   |       |  |  |  |  |
| Attributes                             | Value   | Units |  |  |  |  |
| Link Name                              | Home to remote  |       |  |  |  |  |
| Site Name                              | Home  |       |  |  |  |  |
| Master Slave Mode                      | Master  |       |  |  |  |  |
| Link Mode Optimization                 | IP Traffic  |       |  |  |  |  |
| Channel Bandwidth                      | 20  | MHz   |  |  |  |  |
| Max Receive Modulation Mode            | 256QAM 0.81 💌   |       |  |  |  |  |
| Ethernet Capped Max Wireless Speed     | ⊙ Disabled ○ Enabled  |       |  |  |  |  |
| Max Transmit Power                     | 27  | dBm   |  |  |  |  |
| Antenna Gain                           | 22.0  | dBi   |  |  |  |  |
| Cable Loss                             | 0.0   | dB    |  |  |  |  |
| EIRP                                   | 49.0  | dBm   |  |  |  |  |
| Encryption Algorithm                   | ⊙None OAES 128-bit (Rijndael)   |       |  |  |  |  |
| Encryption Key                         |   |       |  |  |  |  |
| Confirm Encryption Key                 |   |       |  |  |  |  |
|  | Submit Updated System Configuration Reset Form                            |       |  |  |  |  |

Figure 6-8 System Configuration Page

While the majority of the system configuration is entered during installation and should never require changing, this page offers the system administrator the ability to change the basic system parameters for both the wireless and Ethernet components.

The System Configuration page contains the following attributes:

## Link Name

User defined identity for the unit (max 63 characters).

## Site Name

User defined name for the site, with additional notes (if required).

### **Master Slave Mode**

Current settings is displayed This can be modified using the Installation pages, as described in Installation pages on page 6-51.

## **Link Mode Optimization**

Current settings is displayed This can be modified using the Installation pages, as described in Installation pages on page 6-51.

## **Channel Bandwidth**

Current settings is displayed This can be modified using the Installation pages, as described in Installation pages on page 6-51.

## **Max Receive Modulation Mode**

This is the maximum mode the unit will use as its adaptive modulation. By default the Max Receive Modulation Mode is the highest mode available.

For minimum error rates, set the maximum modulation mode to the minimum necessary to carry the required traffic.

## **Ethernet Capped Max Wireless Speed**

When enabled, this option will cap the wireless speed to a mode that the connected Ethernet connection can sustain.

## **Maximum Transmit Power**

This specifies the maximum transmit power in dBm of the system. It is country dependent and although the user can change this in 1dB steps, it will be limited to that country's regulations.

## 

**UK requirement:** In the UK there is a legal requirement to provide a minimum of 19 dB of transmit power control range. When the equipment is operating with a UK License Key, an additional facility is provided on the configuration page that allows the transmitted power to be reduced by 19 dB compared to the maximum allowed with a simple single step control..

Why Reduce Transmit Power? If the link losses are low and the link data rate and availability targets are being easily achieved, the transmitted power level may be reduced with a consequent benefit to other users of the band, such as fixed satellite links.

#### Antenna Gain, Cable Loss and EIRP

Only displayed when Platform Variant is set to "Connectorized" in the Installation pages. For more information about the configuration of connectorized PTP 600 units, refer to Software and features on page 8-3.

## **Encryption Algorithm, Encryption Key and Confirm Encryption Key**

Only displayed when AES encryption is enabled by license key. For more information, refer to Enabling AES encryption at the wireless interface on page 6-96.

## Spectrum management

Spectrum Management Selection is the PTP 600 Series feature that monitors the available wireless spectrum and directs both ends of the wireless link to operate on a channel with a minimum level of co-channel and adjacent channel interference.

## Wireless channels

The PTP 600 Series operates using a set of predefined overlapping channels. There are a different number of channels, depending on the raster mode selected. Each channel occupies 30 MHz, 20 MHz, 15 MHz, 10 MHz or 5 MHz of wireless spectrum and is offset in center frequency from its neighboring channel by 10 MHz or 6 MHz. It is important to note that adjacent channels on the Spectrum management display have a 10 MHz or 6 MHz overlap to the adjacent channel.

The default channelization can be modified by varying the lower center frequency attribute in the installation wizard, as described in Installation step 2 - wireless configuration on page 6-59.

## Spectrum management measurements

The PTP 600 Series performs two mean signal measurements per TDD cycle, per channel. This mean measurement represents the mean received signal power for the 40 microseconds measurement period.

The Spectrum Management algorithm collects measurements equally from all channels. This process is called the Channel Availability Check (hereafter referred to by the acronym CAC). The CAC uses a round-robin channel selection process to collect an equal amount of measurements from each channel. It is important to note that the CAC measurement process is not altered by the channel barring process. Measurements are still collected for all channels irrespective of the number of barred channels.

## Measurement analysis

Spectrum Management uses statistical analysis to process the received peak and mean measurement. The statistical analysis is based on a fixed, one minute, measurement quantization period. Spectrum Management collects data for the specified quantization period and only at the end of the period is the statistical analysis performed.

The analysis produces three key metrics for each channel:

## **Peak of Means**

This is the largest mean interference measurement encountered during the quantization period. The peak of means is similar to the peak of peaks and is useful for detecting slightly longer duration spikes in the interference environment.

## 99.9% Percentile of the Means

This is the value of mean interference measurement which 99.9% of all mean measurements fall below, during the quantization period. The 99.9% percentile metric is useful for detecting short duration repetitive interference that by its very nature has a minimal effect of the mean of means.

### **Mean of Means**

This is the arithmetic mean of the measured means during a quantization period. The mean of means is a coarse measure of signal interference and gives an indication of the average interference level measured during the quantization period. The metric is not very good at predicting intermittent interference and is included to show the spread between the mean of means, the 99.9% percentile and the peak of means.

## 

The arithmetic mean is the true power mean and not the mean of the values expressed in dBm.

Spectrum Management uses the 99.9% percentile as the prime interference measurement. All subsequent references to interference level refer to this percentile measurement.

## **Statistical summary**

The display of statistical measurement on the spectrum management page always shows a statistical summary of all channel measurement. The statistical summary is controlled by the Statistics Window attribute. This attribute defaults to a value of twenty minutes, which means that the mean and percentile values displayed for each channel are calculated over the 20 minute period. All channel decisions are made using the values computed over the statistics window period.

## The spectrum management master / slave relationship

The Spectrum Management operates in a master / slave relationship. The master is assumed to be the link master configured during installation. All Spectrum Management configuration changes MUST be performed from the master. To enforce this, the Spectrum Management web page has a different appearance depending if you are viewing the data from the master or slave.

All configuration changes are applied at the master only. These changes are then messaged from the master to the slave. Any Spectrum Management configuration messages received at the slave are stored in non-volatile memory. This enables both master and slave to keep identical copies of Spectrum Management configuration data in their non-volatile memories. It is therefore possible to swap master and slave roles on an active Point-to-Point link without modifying Spectrum Management configuration.

Figure 6-9 shows an example Spectrum Management webpage as seen from the master.

Figure 6-10 shows an example Spectrum Management webpage as seen from the slave. It should be noted that the key configuration attributes are not available on the slave web page.



These examples are for 15 MHz operation; other channel bandwidths are similar. The width of the vertical green bar represents the channel width.



Figure 6-9 Spectrum Management as seen from the Master



Figure 6-10 Spectrum Management as seen from the Slave

## Spectrum management configuration

The following section describes the user modifiable configuration accessible from the Spectrum Management webpage (Figure 6-9). It is recommended that the default values are maintained. If the user believes that the performance of the Spectrum Management algorithm requires some modifications this should only be done after consulting the Motorola Point-to-Point distributor or one of the system field support engineers.

The Spectrum Management page contains the following fields:

## **Page Refresh Period**

The page refreshes automatically according to the setting entered here (in seconds).

## **Hopping Margin**

Spectrum Management uses this margin when making a channel hop decision. If the interference level of the target channel is lower than that of the active channel by at least the Hopping Margin, the link will hop to the target channel. The default setting is 3 dB in non-radar regions, or 10 dB in radar regions.

## **Asymmetric DFS**

Only displayed in non-radar regions when i-DFS is enabled. The default configuration of symmetric operation constrains the link to operate symmetrically, using the same transmit and receive channels. When in symmetric mode the slave unit will always follow the master. If the master moves to a new channel the slave will hop to the same channel. When the Point-to-Point link is configured as an asymmetric link both the master and slave are free to select the best channel from their own set of local interference metrics.

## **Spectrum Management Control**

Only displayed in radar regions. The options are "DFS" and "DFS with i-DFS"

## **Hopping Period (not configurable)**

The Spectrum Management algorithm evaluates the metrics every 'Hopping Period' seconds (180 seconds by default) looking for a channel with lower levels of interference. If a better channel is located, Spectrum Management performs an automated channel hop. If SNMP or SMTP alerts are enabled an SNMP TRAP or an email alert is sent warning the system administrator of the channel change.

## **Hopping Counter**

This is used to record the number of channel hops. The number in the "(+)" brackets indicates the number of channel changes since the last screen refresh.

## **Interference Threshold**

Spectrum Management uses the interference threshold to perform instantaneous channel hops. If the measured interference on a channel exceeds the specified threshold, then i-DFS will instruct the wireless to immediately move to a better channel. If a better channel cannot be found the PTP 600 Series will continue to use the current active channel. (Default –85 dBm).

## **Channel Bandwidth (not configurable)**

This shows the value of the variable channel bandwidth selected.

## **Barring channels**

Channels can only be barred / unbarred by the system administrator from the master Spectrum Management web page. The barring / unbarring operations are disabled on the slave web page. If an attempt to bar / unbar a channel is made at the slave, a warning dialog is generated.

Barring/Unbarring of channels is performed by clicking the appropriate channel on the local or peer channel spectrum plots on the master web page. Each bar / unbar attempt will be proceeded by a confirmation dialog. It should be noted that the channel bar will take effect immediately and is not related to the measurement quantization period.

## Master and slave channel spectrum graphics

Spectrum Management presents its computed statistical measurements in a graphical display on both the master and slave Spectrum Management web page.



Figure 6-11 Example spectrum management graphic

The X-axis shows a stylized view of the 9 or 10 selectable wireless channels. It is important to note that adjacent channels on the display have a 10 MHz overlap. The display separates the display of channels to help the clarity of the resultant display. The axis is labeled using the channel center frequencies in MHz.

The Y-axis shows the interference power levels from -100 to -40 dBm.

The active channel (channel 5 in Figure 6-11) is always marked using hatched green and white lines. The width of the hatching is directly proportional the channel bandwidth spectral occupancy of the channel.

The individual channel metrics are displayed using a colored bar and an 'I' bar.

The colored bar represents the following channel state:

| Green  | Active       | The channel is currently in use, hosting the Point-to-Point wireless link   |
|--------|--------------|---|
| Orange | Interference | The channel has interference above the interference threshold   |
| Blue   | Available    | The channel has an interference level below<br>the interference threshold and is considered by<br>the Spectrum Management algorithm suitable<br>for hosting the Point-to-Point link |
| Grey   | Barred       | The system administrator has barred this<br>channel from use. For improved visibility, an<br>additional red 'lock' symbol is used to indicate<br>that a channel is barred.          |

 Table 6-1
 Spectrum management change state key

The top of the colored bar represents the 99.9% percentile metric for specific channel.

The 'I' Bar is used to display the mean of means and peak of means metrics. The lower horizontal bar represents the mean of means and the upper horizontal bar represents the peak of means. The vertical bar is used as a visual cue to highlight the statistical spread between the peak and the mean of the statistical distribution.

## Active channel history

The active channel history is a time series display of the channels used by the PTP 600 Series over the last 25 hours. The active channel history is activated from the main Spectrum Management page using the 'Active Channel History' hyperlink. An example of the active channel history display is shown in Figure 6-12. Where there are parallel entries on the display this signifies that the wireless link occupied this channel during the measurement period. The measurement periods are one minute (from zero to sixty minutes) and twenty minutes from (60 minutes to twenty five hours).





## Viewing historic spectrum management metrics

Spectrum Management allows the system administrator to view the results of previous measurement quantization periods. Holding down the shift key and clicking the appropriate channel on the local channel spectrum plots activates this feature. This feature is available on both the master and slave web page.

Figure 6-13 Spectrum management time series plot



Figure 6-13 shows an example time series plot. A time series plot displays the previous 132 measurement quantization periods. If the PTP 600 Series has not been running for 132 quantization periods then only the number of measurement quantization periods that are available are displayed.

Table 6-2 Spectrum management time series key

| GREEN | Peak of Means interference measurement             |
|-------|--|
| BLACK | 99.9% percentile of means interference measurement |
| BLUE  | Mean of Means interference measurement             |

## Spectrum management (fixed frequency)

The PTP 600 Series software allows a user to optionally fix transmit and receive frequencies for a wireless link. Once configured, the spectrum management software will not attempt to move the wireless link to a channel with lower co and adjacent channel interference. Therefore this mode of operation is only recommended for deployments where the installer has a good understanding the prevailing interference environment. (See Installation step 2 - wireless configuration on page 6-59). Care must also be taken to ensure that the frequency allocations at each end of the link are compatible. To help the user when identifying the mode of operation Spectrum Management uses two visual cues. See Figure 6-14. The main page title identifies the mode of operation using the "Fixed Frequency Mode" postfix and the selected channels are identified by a red capital 'F'.



Figure 6-14 Spectrum Management Fixed Frequency Mode page

Channel barring is disabled in fixed frequency mode; it is not required as dynamic channel hopping is prohibited in this mode.

phn-0896\_009v003 Feb 2010

## UNDER DEVELOPMENT

The only controls available to the master are the Statistics Window and Interference Threshold attributes. They will have no effect on the operation of the wireless link and will only effect the generation of the channel spectrum graphics.

The active channel history menu is removed in this mode of operation as channel hopping is prohibited.



Figure 6-15 Spectrum Management Help Page (fixed frequency)

## Spectrum management control with radar avoidance

When operating with Radar Avoidance enabled the following variances in operation apply:

- The words "Radar Avoidance" are appended to the "Spectrum Management" title at the top of the screen. See Figure 6-16 and Figure 6-17.
- The only controls available to the master are the Interference Threshold attribute. This has no effect on the operation of the wireless link and will only affect the generation of the channel spectrum graphics. See Figure 6-16.
- Extra color coding of the interference histogram is provided. See Table 6-3.

When operating with RTTT (Road transport and Traffic Telematics) Avoidance enabled or other regulatory restrictions on channel usage the following variances apply:

• All channels marked with a 'no entry' symbol with their associated statistics colored black are the prohibited channels. See Figure 6-16 and Figure 6-17. These channels are never used to host the wireless link, but CAC measurements are still taken so that adjacent channel biases can be calculated correctly and so the user can see if other equipment is in use.









The colored bar represents the following channel state:

## Table 6-3 Spectrum management change state key with operational restrictions

| Green         | Active            | The channel is currently in use hosting the Point-to-Point wireless link  |
|---------------|-------------------|---|
| Orange        | Interference      | The channel has interference above the interference threshold   |
| Blue          | Available         | The channel has an interference level below the<br>interference threshold and is considered by the Spectrum<br>Management algorithm suitable for hosting the<br>Point-to-Point link   |
| Grey          | Barred            | The system administrator has barred this channel from<br>use. Because the low signal levels encountered when a unit<br>is powered up in a laboratory environment prior to<br>installation (which makes the grey of the channel bar<br>difficult to see). An additional red 'lock' symbol is used to<br>indicate that a channel is barred. |
| Red           | Radar<br>Detected | Impulsive Radar Interference has been detected on this<br>channel and the channel is unavailable for 30 minutes. At<br>the end of the 30 minute period a Channel Availability<br>Check is required to demonstrate no radar signals remain<br>on this channel before it can be used for the radio link.                                    |
| Region<br>Bar | Region Bar        | This channel has been barred from use by the local region regulator   |

## PTP 25600 spectrum management example

As described in Section PTP 25600 available spectrum settings on page 4-21, the PTP 25600 frequency variant can operate in three frequency bands. Figure 6-18 shows an example of a Lower Band with a 30 MHz channel bandwidth.



Figure 6-18 PTP 25600 example of Spectrum Management page

## **QoS configuration**

The QoS configuration page (Figure 6-19) allows the system administrator to configure the classification of priority encoded Ethernet frames into up to eight traffic classes.

Figure 6-19 QoS Configuration page

| QoS Configu                          | ratior                           | ו           |            |             |             |             |             |              |          |
|--------------------------------------|----------------------------------|-------------|------------|-------------|-------------|-------------|-------------|--------------|----------|
| This page controls the c             | lassificatio                     | n of tagged | d Ethernet | frames into | priority qu | ieues. Q7 i | s the highe | est priority | queue.   |
| VLAN Priority                        | P0                               | P1          | P2         | P3          | P4          | P5          | P6          | P7           | Untagged |
| Priority Queue Mapping               | Q0 🔽                             | Q1 🔽        | Q1 🔽       | Q1 💌        | Q1 🔽        | Q1 💌        | Q1 💌        | Q1 🔽         | Q0 💌     |
| Set Default 802.1Q Priority Mappings |                                  |             |            |             |             |             |             |              |          |
|                                      | Submit Updated Values Reset Form |             |            |             |             |             |             |              |          |

The QoS Configuration page contains the following attributes:

## **Priority Queue Mapping**

Specifies the VLAN priority flag to packet queue mapping. The higher the queue number the greater its priority.

## **Quality of Service Default Settings**

The default classification rules are as shown in Table 6-4.

 Table 6-4
 QoS default settings

| Link Layer Priority | Traffic Class |
|---------------------|---------------|
| 0                   | Q0            |
| 1                   | Q1            |
| 2                   | Q1            |
| 3                   | Q1            |
| 4                   | Q1            |
| 5                   | Q1            |
| 6                   | Q1            |
| 7                   | Q1            |
| Untagged            | Q0            |

In the case where the ODU is upgraded from an earlier release that supports only two traffic classes, the classification rules will be determined by the stored value of "VLAN High Priority Traffic Threshold". For example, if the existing threshold was set to "VLAN User Priority 4 and Above" then the classification rules would be initialized as shown in Table 6-5.

| Link Layer Priority | Traffic Class |
|---------------------|---------------|
| 0                   | Q0            |
| 1                   | Q0            |
| 2                   | Q0            |
| 3                   | Q0            |
| 4                   | Q1            |
| 5                   | Q1            |
| 6                   | Q1            |

## Table 6-5 Classification rules upgrade example

| Link Layer Priority | Traffic Class |
|---------------------|---------------|
| 7                   | Q1            |
| Untagged            | Q0            |

The user interface also allows configuration of IEEE802.1Q classification rules as shown in Table 6-6 using the button 'Set Default 802.1Q Priority Mappings'.

| Link Layer Priority | Traffic Class |
|---------------------|---------------|
| 0                   | Q1            |
| 1                   | Q0            |
| 2                   | Q2            |
| 3                   | Q3            |
| 4                   | Q4            |
| 5                   | Q5            |
| 6                   | Q6            |
| 7                   | Q7            |
| Untagged            | Q1            |

 Table 6-6
 IEEE802.1Q classification rules

## **Configuring the IP and Ethernet interfaces**

## LAN configuration

The LAN configuration page (Figure 6-20) is used by the system administrator to configure the PTP 600 Series LAN interface.

Figure 6-20 LAN Configuration page

| LAN Configuration  |                         |  |
|--|-------------------------|--|
| This page controls the LAN configuration of the PTP wireless unit. |                         |  |
| Attributes   | Value IInite            |  |
| IP Address   |                         |  |
| Subnet Mask  | 255 . 255 . 0 . 0       |  |
| Gateway IP Address   | 169 . 254 . 0 . 0       |  |
| Use VLAN For Management Interfaces                                 | No VLAN Tagging         |  |
| Ethernet Auto Negotiation  | O Disabled 💿 Enabled    |  |
| Auto Neg Advertisment  | ☑ 1000 Mbps Full Duplex |  |
|  | 100 Mbps Full Duplex    |  |
|  | ☑ 100 Mbps Half Duplex  |  |
|  | ✓ 10 Mbps Full Duplex   |  |
|  | ✓ 10 Mbps Half Duplex   |  |
| Ethernet Auto Mdix   | O Disabled 💿 Enabled    |  |
| Drop Ethernet Link On Wireless Link Down                           | O Disabled ○ Enabled    |  |
| Local Packet Filtering   | O Disabled O Enabled    |  |
| Submit Updated System Configuration Reset Form                     |                         |  |

All of the LAN Configuration attributes are non-volatile, so once set, they will be used by the unit even after a power on reboot. The LAN Configuration page contains the following fields:

## **IP Address**

Internet protocol (IP) address. This address is used by the family of Internet protocols to uniquely identify this unit on a network.

UNDER DEVELOPMENT

### **Subnet Mask**

A subnet allows the flow of network traffic between hosts to be segregated based on a network configuration.

### **Gateway IP Address**

The IP address of a computer / router on the current network that acts as a gateway.

## **Use VLAN For Management Interfaces**

This controls use of VLAN tags at the management interfaces (WWW/SNMP/SMTP/SNTP). See LAN configuration page for VLAN on page 6-45.

### **Ethernet Auto Negotiation**

This enables the Ethernet configuration to be forced rather than auto negotiated.

## 

The IEEE802.3 specification recommends enabling Auto Negotiation. The configuration should only be forced if you are having problems with auto negotiation. You must ensure that you configure both this unit and the Ethernet port to which it is connected identically. If you force a fixed Ethernet Configuration on the PTP 600 Series then you MUST also force the same fixed configuration on the equipment to which it is connected. If you fail to force the configuration of the connected equipment, its automatic configuration mechanisms will normally cause a duplex mismatch, and you will receive greatly reduced throughput!

When Ethernet Auto Negotiation is Disabled, the format of the LAN configuration page changes see LAN Configuration Page – Manual Ethernet Configuration on page 6-48.

#### **Auto Neg Advertisement**

This controls the rates that the auto negotiation mechanism will advertise as available.

## 

Over the air throughput will be capped to the rate of the Ethernet interface at the receiving end of the link.

#### **Ethernet Auto Mdix**

This enables/disables the Auto Medium Dependent Interface (MDI)/Medium Dependent Interface Crossover (MDIX) capability. Default is "Enabled".

### **Drop Ethernet Link On Wireless Link Down**

When this option is enabled the Ethernet link is momentarily dropped when the wireless link goes down. This feature is used to indicate to the connected network equipment that this Ethernet link is no longer available, thus causing STP (Spanning Tree Protocol) to re-route packets through an alternative link.

### **Local Packet Filtering**

When Local Packet Filtering is "Enabled", the bridge learns the source MAC addresses of devices transmitting Ethernet packets on the local Ethernet network, and only bridges packets to the remote unit if the destination MAC address has not been learned as a 'local' device.

When Local Packet Filtering is 'Disabled' the bridge does not learn the source MAC addresses of devices transmitting Ethernet packets on the local Ethernet network, and bridges ALL Ethernet packets received to the remote unit. Local Packet Filtering should be disabled when external Ethernet switching hardware or a router is present. The default setting for Local Packet Filtering is disabled.

## **Reboot verification**

A number of attributes, such as IP Address, Subnet Mask and Gateway IP Address and VLAN settings will require a reboot before they are used. If any of these attributes are changed a reboot screen appears asking the user to verify the reboot (Figure 6-21 or Figure 6-22).

Figure 6-21 Configuration Reboot page

| The Configuration Changes Require a<br>System Reboot<br>The configuration changes you requested can only be activated via a system<br>reboot. Would you like to reboot the wireless unit now? |  |        |                      |
|---|--|--------|----------------------|
|   |  |        | Reboot Wireless Unit |
|   |  | < Back |                      |

Figure 6-22 Configuration Reboot page - Ethernet auto negotiation disabled



This will be followed by a pop-up dialogue box asking to confirm the action.

# 

At this point you will lose connection to the unit. If you have just changed the IP Address, you now have to reconnect to the unit using the address just set.

## LAN configuration page for VLAN

The layout of the LAN Configuration page changes if this attribute is enabled in order to allow the VLAN VID and VLAN Priority to be set, see Figure 6-23. The VLAN settings are applied only after the unit is rebooted.

## 

You must ensure that you can access the VLAN which you configure here, otherwise you will be unable to access the unit following the next reboot.

The PTP 600 management function is only compatible with single VLAN tagged packets. Any management packet with two or more packets will be ignored.

| LAN Configuration  |                                       |  |
|--|---------------------------------------|--|
| This page controls the LAN configuration of the PTP wireless unit. |                                       |  |
| Attributes   | Value Units                           |  |
| IP Address   | 10 . 10 . 10 . 10                     |  |
| Subnet Mask  | 255 . 0 . 0 . 0                       |  |
| Gateway IP Address   | 10 . 10 . 10 . 1                      |  |
| VLAN High Priority Traffic Threshold                               | VLAN User Priority 1 and Above        |  |
| Use VLAN For Management Interfaces                                 | IEEE 802.1Q Tagged (C-Tag, Type 8100) |  |
| VLAN Management VID  | 1                                     |  |
| VLAN Management Priority   | 0                                     |  |
| VLAN Management VID Validation                                     | ⊙ Disabled ○ Enabled                  |  |
| Ethernet Auto Negotiation  | O Disabled 💿 Enabled                  |  |
| Auto Neg Advertisment  | ☑ 1000 Mbps Full Duplex               |  |
|  | ☑ 100 Mbps Full Duplex                |  |
|  | ☑ 100 Mbps Half Duplex                |  |
|  | ☑ 10 Mbps Full Duplex                 |  |
|  | ☑ 10 Mbps Half Duplex                 |  |
| Ethernet Auto Mdix   | O Disabled 💿 Enabled                  |  |
| Drop Ethernet Link On Wireless Link Down                           | O Disabled ○ Enabled                  |  |
| Local Packet Filtering   | O Disabled ○ Enabled                  |  |
| Submit Updated System Configuration Reset Form                     |                                       |  |

Figure 6-23 LAN Configuration page with VLAN fields

When VLAN is enabled, the LAN Configuration page contains the following extra fields:

### **Use VLAN For Management Interfaces**

This control can be configured with one of the following three values:

- No VLAN Tagging
- o IEEE 802.1Q Tagged (C-Tag, Type 8100)
- o IEEE 802.1ad Tagged (S-Tag or B-Tag, Type 88a8)

## VLAN Management VID

This 802.1Q or 802.1ad VLAN ID (VID) will be included in packets generated by the management interfaces. Valid settings are in the range 0 to 4094.

## **VLAN Management Priority**

This 802.1Q or 802.1ad VLAN Priority will be included in packets generated by the management interfaces. Valid settings are in the range 0 to 7.

## **VLAN Management VID Validation**

If enabled, the management interfaces will only respond to Ethernet packets tagged with the configured Management VID; otherwise packets with any VID will be accepted.
### LAN configuration page for manual ethernet configuration

The layout of the LAN Configuration page changes if Ethernet Auto Negotiation is Disabled, see Figure 6-24.

Figure 6-24 LAN Configuration page for manual Ethernet configuration

| LAN Configuration                           |                                 |  |
|---|---------------------------------|--|
| This page controls the LAN configuration of | f the PTP wireless unit.        |  |
| Attributes                                  | Value Units                     |  |
| IP Address                                  | 10 . 10 . 10 . 10               |  |
| Subnet Mask                                 | 255 . 0 . 0 . 0                 |  |
| Gateway IP Address                          | 10 . 10 . 10 . 1                |  |
| VLAN High Priority Traffic Threshold        | VLAN User Priority 1 and Above  |  |
| Use VLAN For Management Interfaces          | No VLAN Tagging                 |  |
| Ethernet Auto Negotiation                   | O Disabled ○ Enabled            |  |
| Forced Configuration                        | 100 Mbps Copper Full Duplex 💌   |  |
| Ethernet Auto Mdix                          | O Disabled 💿 Enabled            |  |
| Drop Ethernet Link On Wireless Link Down    | O Disabled O Enabled            |  |
| Local Packet Filtering                      | O Disabled ○ Enabled            |  |
| Submit Updated                              | System Configuration Reset Form |  |

When Ethernet Auto Negotiation is Disabled, the LAN Configuration page contains the following extra field:

### **Force Configuration**

This option allows the user to force the speed and duplex setting of the Ethernet interface. Over the air throughput will be capped to the rate of the Ethernet interface at the receiving end of the link.

## **NOTE**

Instead of forcing configuration, the IEEE802.3 specification recommends enabling Auto Negotiation with only the specific ability or abilities advertised.

## Configuring the telecoms circuits

The Telecoms page (Figure 6-25) is available when the Telecoms Interface has been set to either T1 or E1 in the Installation Wizard.

The unit displays the interface setting and line code for the available telecoms channels. The PTP 600 Series is able to support two T1 or E1 channels. These channels are referred to as "Channel A" and "Channel B".

The "Channel B" configuration and controls will be displayed only when the second channel is enabled.

| Telecoms                                 |                             |       |
|--|-----------------------------|-------|
| This page controls the telecoms configur | ation of the wireless unit. |       |
| Attributes                               | Value                       | Units |
| Telecoms Interface                       | T1                          |       |
| Channel A Line Code                      | B8ZS/HDB3                   |       |
| Channel A Cable Length                   | 133                         | feet  |
| Channel A Loopback                       | 💿 None 🔿 Copper 🔿 Wireless  |       |
| Channel B Line Code                      | B8ZS/HDB3                   |       |
| Channel B Cable Length                   | 133                         | feet  |
| Channel B Loopback                       | ⊙ None ○ Copper ○ Wireless  |       |
| Lowest Telecoms Modulation Mode          | 256QAM 0.81 (Single)        |       |
| Lowest Dual Payload Modulation Mode      | 16QAM 0.87 (Dual)           |       |
| Lowest Single Payload Modulation Mode    | 256QAM 0.81 (Single)        |       |
| Submit Updated System C                  | Configuration Reset Form    | ]     |

### Figure 6-25 Telecoms page

The Telecoms page contains the following fields:

### **Telecoms Interface**

May be either T1 or E1, reflecting the Installation Wizard setting.

### Line Code

Displays the Line Code setting for each channel. The Line Code configuration must match the configuration of the connected equipment and may be set using the Installation Wizard.

### **Cable Length**

The Cable Length setting is applicable in T1 mode only and shows the cable length specified in the installation wizard.

### Loopback

Allows the T1 or E1 data stream to be looped back at the copper or wireless interface. During normal operation the loopback must be set to "None". It may be helpful during installation to test the telecoms links by performing loopback connections.

A "Copper" loopback connects the received data on a given telecoms interface to the transmit interface. A "Copper" loopback may be used, in conjunction with a Bit Error Rate Tester, to confirm that the correct connections have been made to the ODU. This mode cannot be used for resistance tests as it is only capable of looping back valid telecoms signals.

A "Wireless" loopback sends the telecoms data received across the wireless link back across the link on the same Telecom channel. The link may be checked using, for example, a Bit Error Rate Tester to ensure that no errors are detected.

A typical T1 or E1 installation might include a "Copper" loopback on the local unit followed by a "Wireless" loopback on the remote unit.

It is important to remove all loopbacks on channels for normal operation. Alarms on the Home Page indicate the presence of loopbacks on either channel.

### **Lowest Telecoms Modulation Mode**

The user defined lowest modulation mode at which telecoms data can be sent. If the link cannot sustain telecoms data in this mode then the effective lowest modulation mode may differ

# Lowest Dual Payload Modulation Mode; Lowest Single Payload Modulation Mode

Indicate the effective lowest modulation mode at which telecoms data can be sent, subject to wireless capacity and latency limitations. Under some circumstances, these settings may differ from the user defined Lowest Telecoms Modulation Mode described above.

## **Installation pages**

There follows a description of the installation pages along with their use during the installation configuration process. The actual installation process is described in Manual configuration on page 6-52.

## 

This section assumes that the integrated PTP 600 is being installed. If the connectorized variant is being installed, refer to Software and features on page 8-3 for details of the additional functionality that must be configured.

## **Factory configuration**

All wireless links are shipped as paired units. They are pre-configured at the factory so that they can be installed without the user supplying any configuration. Each wireless link is shipped with the *PTP 600 Installation Guide*. Attached to this guide is a summary of the pre-configured configuration data. Table 6-7 shows a sample link configuration. The values in red type have been committed to the wireless unit's non-volatile storage.

| Example PTP 600 Series Configuration Data   |                                  |  |
|---|----------------------------------|--|
| For your convenience these two<br>as a link | o units have been pre-configured |  |
| <u>Units:</u>                               |                                  |  |
| ODU serial number                           | ODU serial number                |  |
| 016780000FFF                                | 016780000FC7                     |  |
| Ethernet MAC address                        | Ethernet MAC address             |  |
| 00:04:56:80:0F:FF                           | 00:04:56:80:0F:C7                |  |
| Configured as:                              |                                  |  |
|   |                                  |  |
| Master                                      | Slave                            |  |
| Target MAC address                          | Target MAC address               |  |
| 00:04:56:80:0F:C7                           | 00:04:56:80:0F:FF                |  |

 Table 6-7
 Factory configuration values

| License Key         | License Key         |
|---------------------|---------------------|
| A471-FE88-428D-E1F3 | 534F-4F54-D1B0-E2DA |
| IP Address          | IP Address          |
| 169.254.1.2         | 169.254.1.1         |

## 

The factory default configuration is limited in range to 40 Km (25 miles). If you wish to install a wireless link with a range of > 40 Km (> 25 miles) and < 200 Km (< 124 miles) or < 5 Km (< 3 miles) you must follow Manual configuration on page 6-52.

The factory default configuration is set to Region 1. Region 1 allows the PTP 600 Series a maximum transmit power of 25 dBm. If the local regulatory regime limits the maximum transmit power (EIRP) to less than 25 dBm, you should obtain a new license key containing the correct region code from your local distributor or direct from Motorola. Alternatively in the short term, you should reduce the maximum transmit power by following the procedures in Manual configuration on page 6-52.

### Manual configuration

If the installer / system administrator wishes, they may modify the default installation configuration. If only the IP addresses (network configuration) are incorrect it is recommended that the values are changed via the configuration menu, as described in LAN configuration on page 6-42.

## 

If any other parameters (for example region code) require modification, then it is recommended that the system administrator use the Installation Wizard.

The PTP 600 Series operational software requires a license key (Figure 6-26) to enable the wireless bridging capability and programs region code specific parameters in to the unit.

### Figure 6-26 Software License Key page

#### Software License Key A valid software license key is required before installation of the PTP (Point to Point) wireless link can commence. If you do not have a valid license key please contact your distributor. License key data entry Attributes Value Units 5320-1d0d-85d8-a705-4069-d2cc-1ad8-98f3 License Key Validate license key Reset Form Capability summary Attributes Value Units Product Name Motorola PTP 45600 Full MAC Address 00:04:56:88:00:12 Region Code Region Code 23 FIPS Security Level FIP S Encryption Algorithm AES 128 & 256-bit (Rijndael) Frequency Variant 4500 MHz Bandwidth Variant 30 MHz Group Access Enabled

A license key is programmed into each unit during production and can be found written on the Configuration Data Summary Label which is attached to the Quick Install Guide. If subsequently the license key has been mislaid, replacement keys can be applied for online or via your distributor.

If a valid license key is not detected in the unit's non-volatile memory then the user is prompted to enter a valid key. It should be noted that 600 Series units are shipped as link pairs and, as such, valid license keys are entered during the production process. To enter a license key simply type or paste the license key into the data entry box (Figure 6-26) and click the 'validate license key' button.

## **Current installation summary**

When **Installation** is selected from the menu navigation bar, the Current Installation Summary page is displayed (Figure 6-27). Review the current configuration attributes. If any attributes require changing, select **Continue to Installation Wizard**.

Figure 6-27 Current installation summary page

| Current Installation §   | Summary   |       |
|--|---|-------|
| This page shows a summary of the cu<br>Press the 'Continue to Installation Wizar<br>configuration. | rrent unit configuration.<br>d' button below to change this |       |
| Installation configuration   |   |       |
| Attributes   | Value   | Units |
| IP Address   | 1.1.100.11  |       |
| Subnet Mask  | 255.255.0.0   |       |
| Gateway IP Address   | 1.1.1.254   |       |
| Use VLAN For Management Interfaces   | No VLAN Tagging   |       |
| Telecoms Interface   | None  |       |
| Lowest Telecoms Modulation Mode  | BPSK 0.63   |       |
| Access Method  | Group Access  |       |
| Group ID   | 82  |       |
| Dual Payload   | Enabled   |       |
| Master Slave Mode  | Master  |       |
| Link Mode Optimization   | IP Traffic  |       |
| TDD Synchronization Mode   | Disabled  |       |
| Encryption Algorithm   | None  |       |
| Encryption Key   | *****   |       |
| Tx Max Power   | 20  | dBm   |
| Ranging Mode   | Auto 0 to 40 km   |       |
| Platform Variant   | Connectorized   |       |
| Antenna Gain   | 21.5  | dBi   |
| Cable Loss   | 0.0   | dB    |
| EIRP   | 41.5  | dBm   |
| Channel Bandwidth  | 30 MHz  |       |
| Link Symmetry  | 1 to 1  |       |
| Spectrum Management Control  | i_DFS   |       |
| Lower Center Frequency   | 4416  | MHz   |
| Tx Color Code  | A   |       |
| Rx Color Code  | A   |       |
| Automatic Tx Power Control   | Disabled  |       |
| Installation Tones   | Disabled  |       |
| Continue to I  | nstallation Wizard  |       |
|  | llavi   |       |

## Installation step 1 - interface configuration

Step 1 of the installation process requires the installer to enter the Internet Protocol (IP) configuration (Figure 6-28).

Figure 6-28 Step 1: Interface Configuration page

| Step 1: Interface Cor  | nfiguration  |
|--|--|
| Please complete the wizard in order to   | arm the unit.  |
| A valid IP address and subnet mask is n<br>see your network administrator if you a | required before the PTP unit can be used on a network. Please<br>are unsure of the correct values to enter here. |
| Interface configuration data entry   |  |
| Attributes   | Value Units  |
| IP Address   | 10 . 10 . 10 . 10  |
| Subnet Mask  | 255 . 255 . 0 . 0  |
| Gateway IP Address   | 169 . 254 . 0 . 0  |
| Use VLAN For Management Interfaces   | No VLAN Tagging  |
| Telecoms Interface   | ⊙ None ○ E1 ○ T1   |
| Submit Interne   | t Protocol Configuration Reset Form  |
|  | Next >>  |

The Interface Configuration page contains the following fields:

### **IP Address**

Internet protocol (IP) address. This address is used by the family of Internet protocols to uniquely identify this unit on a network.

### Subnet Mask

A subnet allows the flow of network traffic between hosts to be segregated based on a network configuration. By organizing hosts into logical groups, a subnet can improve network security and performance.

### **Gateway IP Address**

The IP address of a computer / router on the current network that acts as a gateway. A gateway acts as an entrance / exit to packets from / to other networks.

### **Use VLAN Management Interface**

Controls whether the management interfaces (HTTP/SNMP/SMTP/SNTP) use a VLAN. Selecting this option presents the user with extra fields in which to enter the Management VLAN ID, Priority and whether to validate the VLAN ID. If the user modifies this control, a warning dialog is displayed see Figure 6-29.

### **Telecoms Interface**

This allows the activation of the PTP 600 Series telecoms interface. The selection options are None, E1 or T1. Mixed T1/E1 configurations are not permitted.

| The pag  | je at http://10.10.10.10 says: 🛛 🛛 🔀  | J |
|----------|---|---|
| <u>^</u> | WARNING:<br>Enabling VLAN tagging for the management interfaces inhibits access to them from non-VLAN tagged<br>sources. Do not enable VLAN for the management interfaces unless you are sure you can<br>generate/receive the VLAN tagged traffic you are selecting<br>OK |   |

#### Figure 6-29 VLAN Warning

Once complete, click the 'Submit Internet Protocol Configuration' button or the 'Next' link.

### **Telecoms interface**

If the telecoms interface is configured to either T1 or E1 then Step 1 of the installation process contains additional configuration fields (Figure 6-30).

Figure 6-30 Step 1: Interface Configuration page for telecoms

| Step 1: Interface Configuration   |  |       |
|---|--|-------|
| Please complete the wizard in order to arm the unit.  |  |       |
| A valid IP address and subnet mask is r<br>a network. Please see your network ac<br>values to enter here. | required before the PTP unit can be used on<br>Iministrator if you are unsure of the correct |       |
| Interface configuration data entry  |  |       |
| Attributes  | Value  | Units |
| IP Address  | 169 . 254 . 1 3  |       |
| Subnet Mask   | 255 , 255 , 0 , 0  |       |
| Gateway IP Address  | 169 , 254 , 0 , 0  |       |
| Use VLAN For Management Interfaces  | No VLAN Tagging 🛛 👻  |       |
| Telecoms Interface  | ○ None ○ E1 ⊙ T1   |       |
| Telecoms Channel Selection  | ○ Channel A Only ④ Channels A and B  |       |
| Channel A Line Code   | ○ AMI ⊙ B8ZS/HDB3  |       |
| Channel A Cable Length  | ⊙ 133 ○ 266 ○ 399 ○ 533 ○ 655  | feet  |
| Channel B Line Code   | ○ AMI ⊙ B8ZS/HDB3  |       |
| Channel B Cable Length  | ⊙ 133 ○ 266 ○ 399 ○ 533 ○ 655  | feet  |
| Lowest Telecoms Modulation Mode   | BPSK 0.63  |       |
| Submit Internet   | Protocol Configuration Reset Form  |       |
|   | llext  | >>    |

The additional E1 or T1 fields are:

### **Telecoms Channel Selection**

This allows the user to configure one or two interfaces (Channel A or Channel A and B).

### **Channel A Line Code**

The line code setting of the telecoms interface. This must match the setting of the device connected to this interface.

### **Channel B Line Code**

The line code setting of the telecoms interface. This must match the setting of the device connected to this interface.

### **NOTE**

If a copper loopback is used to test the E1/T1 link, ensure that the test set is configured manually. If the test set is allowed to configure automatically, neither it nor the ODU send a signal until they receive one, so the test appears to fail.

### **Channel A/B Cable Length**

This field is applicable to the T1 operating mode only. It configures the T1 transceiver to output a signal suitable for driving a cable of the specified length. This should be set to reflect the length of cable between the wireless unit and the connected equipment.

### **Lowest Telecoms Modulation Mode**

The lowest modulation mode at which telecoms data will be sent, if there is sufficient link capacity.

In conjunction with the LINKPlanner tool, this setting may be used to optimize the latency for links which operate in consistently high modulation modes. High data rate links are able to support lower latencies.

The lowest telecoms modulation mode is selected from a rate ordered drop-down list. If this selected mode has insufficient capacity to support the telecoms data then the effective lowest modulation mode, determined when the wireless link starts, will be higher. The effective lowest modulation mode is displayed on the Telecoms Configuration page.

## Installation step 2 - wireless configuration

Step 2 of the installation process requires the installer to enter the wireless configuration parameters. Figure 6-31 is an example of the Wireless Configuration screen.

| Step 2: Wireless               | s Configuration  |       |
|--------------------------------|--|-------|
| Please enter the following wir | reless configuration parameters  |       |
| Wireless data entry            |  |       |
| Attributes                     | Value  | Units |
| Access Method                  | O Link Access ○ Group Access   |       |
| Target MAC Address             | 00:04:56: 88 ; 00 ; 12   |       |
| Dual Payload                   | ⊙ Disabled ○ Enabled   |       |
| Master Slave Mode              | ⊙ Master ⊖ Slave   |       |
| Link Mode Optimization         | ⊙ IP Traffic ◯ TDM Traffic   |       |
| TDD Synchronization Mode       | Disabled      Denabled   |       |
| Encryption Algorithm           | ⊙ None O AES 128-bit (Rijndael) O AES 256-bit (Rijndael)               |       |
| Encryption Key                 |  |       |
| Confirm Encryption Key         |  |       |
| Tx Max Power                   | 20   | dBm   |
| Ranging Mode                   | ⊙ Auto 0 to 40 km ○ Auto 0 to 100 km ○ Auto 0 to 200 km ○ Target Range |       |
| Target Range                   | 0.0  | km    |
| Platform Variant               | Integrated Antenna O Connectorized                                     |       |
| Channel Bandwidth              | ⊙ 30 MHz ○ 20 MHz ○ 15 MHz ○ 10 MHz ○ 5 MHz                            |       |
| Link Symmetry                  | O Adaptive ○ 2 to 1 ○ 1 to 1 ○ 1 to 2                                  |       |
| Spectrum Management<br>Control | ⊙i_DFS ○ Fixed Frequency   |       |
| Lower Center Frequency         | 4416 💌   | MHz   |
| Tx Color Code                  |  |       |
| Rx Color Code                  | A 💌  |       |
| Automatic Tx Power Control     | O Disabled ○ Enabled   |       |
| Installation Tones             | ⊙ Disabled ○ Enabled   |       |
|                                | Submit Wireless Configuration Reset Form                               |       |
|                                | llext  | >>    |

Figure 6-31 Step 2: Wireless Configuration page

The contents of the Wireless Configuration screen vary depending upon the frequency variant as follows:

- PTP 25600: Frequency Band field is also displayed.
- Channel Bandwidth options vary depending upon frequency variant and region. For more information, see Table 1-1.
- PTP 49600: Lower Center Frequency is not displayed.

Screen contents also vary depending upon the options selected as follows:

- If Access Method is set to "Group Access", the Target MAC Address field is replaced by Group ID.
- If Spectrum Management Control is set to "Fixed Frequency", the Lower Center Frequency field is replaced by Fixed Tx Frequency and Fixed Rx Frequency.
- If Platform Variant is set to "Connectorized", Antenna Gain and Cable Loss are also displayed. For more information about the configuration of connectorized PTP 600 units, refer to Software and features on page 8-3.

The Wireless Configuration page contains the following fields:

### **Access Method**

This controls whether the link can be established between a pre-paired Master and Slave only ('Link Access') or between Master and Slave belonging to the same group ('Group Access').

### **Target MAC Address**

This is only displayed when Access Method is set to 'Link Access'. This is the MAC Address of the peer unit that will be at the other end of the wireless link. This is used by the system to ensure the unit establishes a wireless link to the correct peer. The MAC Address can be found embedded within the serial number of the unit. The last six characters of the serial number are the last three bytes of the unit's MAC address.

## **NOTE**

A PTP 600 Series system is shipped as a pair of units with pre-loaded correct MAC addresses. Target MAC addresses will only need to be entered if an existing unit has to be replaced in the field or the units configuration has been erased.

### **Group ID**

This is only displayed when Access Method is set to 'Group Access'. It identifies all units belonging to the same group.

### **Dual Payload**

This controls whether the link takes advantage of the channel condition to increase the link throughput. If set to 'Disable', the robustness of the link is improved. The default value is 'Enabled'.

This control is automatically set to 'Enabled' if either E1 or T1 is enabled and Lowest Telecoms Modulation Mode is set to a Dual Payload modulation.

### **Master Slave Mode**

At this point it is necessary to decide which end will designate a Master. The Master unit is the controlling unit with respect to the point-to-point link and its maintenance. The master transmits until the link is made, while the Slave listens for its peer and only transmits when the peer has been identified.

### **Link Mode Optimization**

Optimizes the link behavior according to the type of traffic that will be bridged. There are two modes to choose from: IP and TDM. For more information, see Link mode optimization on page 1-20.

### **TDD Synchronization Mode**

Enables the TDD synchronization feature. See Time division duplex synchronization on page 1-25 for basic description and TDD synchronization configuration on page 6-66 for installation and configuration details.

### **Encryption Algorithm**

This is only displayed when encruption is enabled by license key. The same algorithm must be used at both ends of the link. For more information, see Enabling AES encryption at the wireless interface on page 6-96.

#### **Encryption Key**

This is only displayed when encryption is enabled by license key. The same key must be used at both ends of the link. For more information, see Enabling AES encryption at the wireless interface on page 6-96. When identity based user accounts are enabled, only the Security Officer can change the encryption key.

#### **Confirm Encryption Key**

This is only displayed when encryption is enabled by license key. Must contain the same value as Encryption Key.

### **Tx Max Power**

This attribute controls the maximum transmit power the unit is permitted to use when installing and executing the wireless link. The maximum setting for a particular region or country is controlled by the License Key.

### **Ranging Mode**

During installation, the wireless units perform "Automatic Ranging". The ranging mode allows the installer to control the behavior of the system's automatic ranging algorithms. The default value is 0 to 40 km (0 to 25 miles). If the installer is required to install a link of greater than 40 km (25 miles) then the ranging mode attribute MUST be configured to '0 to 100km' (0 to 62 miles) or '0 to 200km' (0 to 124 miles) mode depending on the range of the link.

## **NOTE**

If preferred, range functions can be configured to operate in miles, as described in Properties on page 6-131.

### **Target Range**

Installers that know the range between the two wireless units to within  $\pm 1$  km can use the target range mode. The main advantage of the target range mode is that it reduces the time taken by the units to range. To use the target range mode the installer MUST select Target Range as the ranging mode and enter the approximate range in km in the Target range data entry field at both ends of the link.

### **Platform Variant**

Chooses between an integrated unit or a connectorized unit that requires an external antenna.

#### **Frequency Band**

Only displayed for the PTP 25600 frequency variant, which operates in one of three bands as described in Variable channel bandwidth operation on page 2-5:

- o Lower: 2496 MHz to 2568 MHz
- o Middle: 2572 MHz to 2614 MHz
- o Upper: 2624 MHz to 2690 MHz

### **Channel Bandwidth**

Users can choose a variable channel bandwidth for the available spectrum. The selection depends upon the frequency variant and region. For more information, see Table 1-1.

### Link Symmetry

(Master only) Values of "Adaptive", "2 to 1", "1 to 1" and "1 to 2" can be selected. The adaptive setting allows link symmetry to vary dynamically in response to offered traffic load. The remaining values select three options for fixed division between transmit and receive time in the TDD frame of the master ODU. The first number in the ratio represents the time allowed for the transmit direction and the second number represents the time allowed for the receive direction.

The appropriate matching Link Symmetry is set at the slave ODU automatically. For example, if Link Symmetry is configured as "2 to 1" at the master ODU, then the slave ODU will be set automatically as "1 to 2". In this example, the master-slave direction has double the capacity of the slave-master direction.

## 

Link Symmetry is subject to the following restrictions:

- o "Adaptive" is not supported in regions where radar avoidance is in use.
- o "Adaptive" is not supported when link optimization is set to "TDM".
- o "Adaptive" is not supported in 5 MHz channel bandwidth.
- $\circ$  "2 to 1" and "1 to 2" are not supported in 5 MHz channel bandwidth.
- "2 to 1" and "1 to 2" are not supported when E1/T1 services are enabled.

### **Spectrum Management Control**

Is used to configure the PTP 600 Series Spectrum Management features, see Spectrum management on page 6-22 for more details. In regions that do not mandate DFS (Radar Detection), the Spectrum Management Control options are "i-DFS" and "Fixed Frequency". In regions that mandate DFS (Radar Detection), the Spectrum Management Control options are "DFS" and "DFS with i-DFS".

The Spectrum Management Control is disabled if the regulatory requirement is fixed frequency only (for example if the frequency variant is PTP 25600).

#### **Lower Center Frequency**

Not displayed for the PTP 49600. Not displayed when Spectrum Management Control is set to "Fixed Frequency". The software for the PTP 600 Series allows a user to optionally adjust the channel center frequencies. Changing the Lower Center Frequency attribute causes all channel center frequencies to be offset. It effectively slides the channelization up or down.

## 

Because the 4.9 GHz spectrum is restricted by license, the Lower Center Frequency is fixed for the PTP 49600 and is therefore not displayed.

### 

The lower center frequency attribute must be configured to the same value for both the master and slave. Failure to do so will cause the wireless link to fail reestablishment. The only way to recover from this situation is to modify the Lower Center Frequency attribute so that they are identical on both the master and slave unit.

### **Default Raster**

This is only displayed when Spectrum Management Control is set to "Fixed Frequency". If this is set to "On", the list of options presented in the fixed Tx frequency box is limited by the default raster.

### **Fixed Tx Frequency, Fixed Rx Frequency**

This is only displayed when Spectrum Management Control is set to "Fixed Frequency". The software for the PTP 600 Series allows a user to optionally fix the Transmit and the Receive frequencies for a wireless link. The settings must be compatible at each end of the link. Once configured, the spectrum management software will not attempt to move the wireless link to a channel with lower co-channel or adjacent channel interference. Therefore this mode of operation is only recommended for deployments where the installer has a good understanding of the prevailing interference environment.

Figure 6-32 shows an example of the fixed frequency configuration for a 30 MHz channel bandwidth. In this example, the Fixed Transmit Frequency is set to 4436 MHz and the Fixed Receive Frequency is set to 4436 MHz. Care must be taken when configuring the Fixed Transmit and Receive Frequencies to ensure that both frequencies are on the same channel raster as the Lower Center Frequency. For example, if the channel raster is 10 MHz, both the Fixed Transmit and Receive Frequencies must be a multiple of 10 MHz from the Lower Center Frequency (4426 = 4416 + 10 MHz) and (4486 = 4416 + 10 MHz × 7).

### **NOTE**

A raster limits the selection of the Rx frequency based upon the setting of the Tx frequency.

### Tx Color Code, Rx Color Code

The Tx Color Code and Rx Color Code attributes need only be considered when the unit is installed in a dense network of synchronized PTP 600 units and where some of the PTP 600 units are operating on the same frequency. In this case, the value would normally be derived by a network radio planner. In all other cases, it is strongly recommended that this attribute is left at the default value of "A".

### **NOTE**

The value of Tx Color Code MUST always match the value of Rx Color Code at the other end of the link.

### **Automatic Tx Power Control**

Leave this attribute at the default setting 'Disabled'.

### **Installation Tones**

Where the use of audio installation tones is not required, this control allows the installer to optionally disable the tone generator during the installation process.

Figure 6-32 Step 2: Wireless Configuration page (extract) for fixed frequency

| Channel Bandwidth           | ⊙ 30 MHz ○ 20 MHz ○ 15 MHz ○ 10 MHz ○ 5 MHz |     |
|-----------------------------|---|-----|
| Link Symmetry               | ⊙ Adaptive ○ 2 to 1 ○ 1 to 1 ○ 1 to 2       |     |
| Spectrum Management Control | Oi_DFS O Fixed Frequency                    |     |
| Default Raster              | ⊙on Ooff                                    |     |
| Fixed Tx Frequency          | 4436 💌                                      | MHz |
| Tx Color Code               | A 🕶   |     |
| Fixed Rx Frequency          | 4436 💌                                      | MHz |
| Rx Color Code               | A 💌   |     |
| Automatic Tx Power Control  | ⊙ Disabled ○ Enabled                        |     |
| Installation Tones          | ⊙ Disabled ○ Enabled                        |     |
|                             | Submit Wireless Configuration Reset Form    |     |
| <b>44</b> Back              | Next  | >>  |

### Submit wireless configuration

Once the installer is satisfied with the wireless configuration options then the **Submit Wireless Configuration** button or the **Next** link should be clicked.

## **TDD synchronization configuration**

TDD synchronization is enabled and configured using the install wizard during the installation process of the link.

### **TDD synchronization enable**

To enable TDD Synchronization, set the TDD Synchronization Mode attribute to 'Enabled' (Figure 6-31).

When TDD Synchronization is enabled, the following restrictions apply:

- Ranging Mode and Target Range are disabled.
- Link Symmetry is forced to '1:1' operation only.

### **TDD synchronization configuration**

When TDD Synchronization is enabled, there is an extra installation screen ("TDD Synchronization", Figure 6-33).

Figure 6-33 Step 3: TDD Synchronization page

| Step 3: TDD Synchronization      |                                  |         |
|----------------------------------|----------------------------------|---------|
| Please enter the following TDD S | ynchronization parameters        |         |
| TDD Synchronization data ent     | try                              |         |
| Attributes                       | Value                            | Units   |
| TDD Sync Device                  | 🔘 UltraSync 💿 PTPSYNC            |         |
| Cluster Master Slave             | ⊙ Cluster Master ○ Cluster Slave |         |
| PTP Sync Site Reference          | 🔘 Internal 💿 GPS/1PPS External   |         |
| Max Burst Duration               | 544 💌                            | μs      |
| TDD Frame Duration               | 1196 💌                           | μs      |
| TDD Frame Offset                 | 0                                | μs      |
| Slave Receive To Transmit Gap    | 39                               | μз      |
| TDD Holdover Mode                | O Strict 💿 Best Effort           |         |
| TDD Holdover Duration            | 10                               | minutes |
| Submit TDD Synchron              | ization Configuration Rese       | t Form  |
| <b>44</b> Back                   | Ne                               | ext ⋗   |

The data required to populate this screen is available in PTP LINKPlanner v1.4.

The TDD Synchronization screen provides the following controls:

#### **TDD Sync Device**

Select the timing device that is to be used for TDD synchronization.

#### **Cluster Master Slave**

Only displayed when TDD Sync Device is set to 'PTPSYNC'.

Select the position that this ODU will occupy in the TDD synchronization cluster. 'Cluster Master' is the first ODU in the synchronization chain. 'Cluster Slave' is the second or subsequent ODU in the chain.

#### **PTP Sync Site Reference**

Only displayed when TDD Sync Device is set to 'PTPSYNC'.

Select the timing reference source for PTP-SYNC. 'Internal' means standalone operation with no external timing reference. 'GPS/1PPS External means that an external GPS receiver will provide a 1 pps timing reference.

### **Max Burst Duration**

The maximum duration of the burst opportunity. Select a value in the range 726 to 2176 microseconds.

### **TDD Frame Duration**

Select a value in the range 1730 to 6410 microseconds.

#### **TDD Frame Offset**

The delay of the start of the TDD frame from the epoch of the external timing reference. This permits the design of synchronized networks in which the phase of the TDD frame is independent from the fundamental master/slave function. This change allows more flexibility in selecting the location of master ODUs. Enter a value in the range from zero to one microsecond less than the TDD Frame Duration.

#### **Slave Receive To Transmit Gap**

The duration of the gap between receive and transmit at the slave ODU.

### **TDD Holdover Mode**

(Master only). Two values: "Strict" and "Best Effort". If a PTP 600 master ODU is configured for a TDD Holdover Mode set to "Strict", then it will not transmit when synchronization is lost. On the other hand, a link configured for TDD Holdover Mode set to "Best Effort" will synchronize when a reference signal is available, but will otherwise use best efforts to operate in unsynchronized fashion.

### **TDD Holdover Duration**

(Master only). Default value 10 minutes, maximum 60 minutes. Specifies duration of holdover period following loss of the external timing reference for TDD synchronization.

## Installation step 3 - confirm configuration

Step 3 of the installation process requires the installer to confirm the wireless configuration parameters. Figure 6-34 is an example of the Confirm Configuration screen. The screen contents vary depending upon the product variant and configuration options selected.

| Please review your entered configurati<br>incorrect please use the back button to  | on. If any of the configuration items are<br>apply the corrections.                        |       |
|--|--|-------|
| Once you're happy with the configurati<br>Installation Agent and Reboot' button, th<br>memory and reboot this wireless unit. | on press the 'Confirm Configuration, Arm<br>nis will commit the parameters to non-volatile |       |
| Installation configuration   |  |       |
| Attributes   | Value  | Units |
| IP Address   | 1.1.100.12   |       |
| Subnet Mask  | 255.255.0.0  |       |
| Gateway IP Address   | 1.1.1.254  |       |
| Use VLAN For Management Interfaces   | No VLAN Tagging  |       |
| Telecoms Interface   | None   |       |
| Lowest Telecoms Modulation Mode  | BPSK 0.63  |       |
| Target MAC Address   | 00:04:56:88:00:12  |       |
| Dual Payload   | Enabled  |       |
| Master Slave Mode  | Master   |       |
| Link Mode Optimization   | IP Traffic   |       |
| TDD Synchronization Mode   | Disabled   |       |
| Encryption Algorithm   | None   |       |
| Encryption Key   | *****  |       |
| Tx Max Power   | 20   | dBm   |
| Ranging Mode   | Auto 0 to 40 km  |       |
| Platform Variant   | Integrated Antenna   |       |
| Channel Bandwidth  | 30 MHz   |       |
| Link Symmetry  | Adaptive   |       |
| Spectrum Management Control  | i_DFS  |       |
| Lower Center Frequency   | 4416   | MHz   |
| Tx Color Code  | A  |       |
| Rx Color Code  | A  |       |
| Automatic Tx Power Control   | Disabled   |       |
| Installation Tones   | Disabled   |       |

### Figure 6-34 Step 3: Confirm Installation Configuration page

If the settings are correct and appropriate, click the **Confirm Configuration, Arm Installation and Reboot** button. The user will now be prompted to confirm the action (Figure 6-35).

< Back

### Figure 6-35 Reboot confirmation pop up

| http://169.254.1.1                         | × |
|--|---|
| Are you sure you want to REBOOT this unit? |   |
| OK Cancel                                  |   |

All the attributes are committed to non-volatile memory. Immediately following the write to non-volatile memory the unit is reset.

## 

If you have changed the Ethernet parameters you must reconnect using the correct network and address settings.

## **Disarm installation**

Figure 6-36 is an example of the Disarm Installation screen. The screen contents vary depending upon the product variant and configuration options selected.

| Figure 6-36 | Disarm | Installation | page |
|-------------|--------|--------------|------|
|-------------|--------|--------------|------|

| The installation agent is armed. If you w<br>'Disarm Installation Agent' button. If you<br>then use the wizards 'back' button | vish to disarm installation then use the<br>wish to reconfigure the installation a | e<br>gent |
|---|--|-----------|
| Installation configuration  |  |           |
| Attributes  | Value  | Units     |
| IP Address  | 1.1.100.11   |           |
| Subnet Mask   | 255.255.0.0  |           |
| Gatevvay IP Address   | 1.1.1.254  |           |
| Use VLAN For Management Interfaces  | No VLAN Tagging  |           |
| Telecoms Interface  | None   |           |
| Lowest Telecoms Modulation Mode   | BPSK 0.63  |           |
| Access Method   | Group Access   |           |
| Group ID  | 82   |           |
| Dual Payload  | Enabled  |           |
| Master Slave Mode   | Master   |           |
| Link Mode Optimization  | IP Traffic   |           |
| TDD Synchronization Mode  | Disabled   |           |
| Encryption Algorithm  | None   |           |
| Encryption Key  | *****  |           |
| Tx Max Power  | 20   | dBm       |
| Ranging Mode  | Auto 0 to 40 km  |           |
| Platform Variant  | Connectorized  |           |
| Antenna Gain  | 21.5   | dBi       |
| Cable Loss  | 0.0  | dB        |
| EIRP  | 48.5   | dBm       |
| Channel Bandwidth   | 30 MHz   |           |
| Link Symmetry   | 1 to 1   |           |
| Spectrum Management Control   | i_DFS  |           |
| Lower Center Frequency  | 4416   | MHz       |
| Tx Color Code   | A  |           |
| Rx Color Code   | A  |           |
| Automatic Tx Power Control  | Disabled   |           |
| Installation Tones  | Disabled   |           |

When Section Installation step 3 - confirm configuration on page 6-69 is complete, the installation is armed and rebooted. Pressing the "Disarm Installation Agent" button completes the installation process and the audible installation tone will be switched off. If the installer wishes to modify the installation configuration then the 'Back' link can be used to access the installation wizard steps described above.

The installation process is completed when both ends of the link are 'disarmed'.

After disarming the wireless link the user is presented with one of two possible configuration pages, see Figure 6-37 and Figure 6-38. The screen presents hyperlinks to the main configuration and spectrum management pages.

Figure 6-37 Optional post disarm configuration 1

## Installation Disarmed

The installation agent has been disarmed. However, the range has not been stored as the link was not up.

To speed up future ranging please re-install and disarm once the link is up.

Figure 6-38 Optional post disarm configuration 2

### Installation Disarmed

The installation agent has been successfully disarmed.

To complete the installation process it is recommended that you now visit the <u>Configuration</u> page and enter the link name and location description fields and optionally save a backup copy of the link configuration.

You may also wish to visit the Spectrum Management page and configure the wireless link channel utilization

After installation the system administrator may wish to modify the wireless units descriptive configuration (link name and link location). In addition the system administrator may wish to change the spectrum management configuration of the wireless unit, or look at the analysis of the 5.8 GHz spectrum to see if the automatic channel selection is appropriate for the system administrator's network. It is also recommended that a backup copy of the wireless units configuration is taken. Hyperlinks are provided on the post disarm page for ease of use.

### Disarm ODU following TDD synchronization configuration

Figure 6-39 Disarm following TDD synchronization

| The installation agent is armed. If you wish t<br>'Disarm Installation Agent' button. If you wis | to disarm installation then u<br>h to reconfigure the install | ise the<br>ation ament |
|--|---|------------------------|
| then use the wizards 'back' button   | into rocornigaro trio inotain                                 | allori agoni           |
| Installation configuration   |   |                        |
| Attributes   | Value   | Units                  |
| IP Address   | 10.10.10.11   |                        |
| Subnet Mask  | 255.255.0.0   |                        |
| Gateway IP Address   | 169.254.0.0   |                        |
| Use VLAN For Management Interfaces   | No VLAN Tagging   |                        |
| Telecoms Interface   | None  |                        |
| Lowest Telecoms Modulation Mode  | BPSK 0.63   |                        |
| Target MAC Address   | 00:04:56:80:27:cb   |                        |
| Master Slave Mode  | Master  |                        |
| Link Mode Optimization   | IP Traffic  |                        |
| TDD Synchronization Mode   | Enabled   |                        |
| TDD Holdover Mode  | Best Effort   |                        |
| TDD Holdover Duration  | 10  | Minutes                |
| TDD Frame Duration   | 3817  | μs                     |
| TDD Frame Offset   | 20  | μs                     |
| Max Burst Duration   | 726   | μs                     |
| Slave Receive To Transmit Gap  | 39  | μs                     |
| TDD Sync Frame Rate  | 262   |                        |
| TDD Sync Max Range   | 200.0   | km                     |
| TDD Sync Max Link Capacity   | 49.09   | Mbps                   |
| Tx Max Power   | 25  | dBm                    |
| Platform ∀ariant   | Connectorized   |                        |
| Antenna Gain   | 23.0  | dBi                    |
| Cable Loss   | 0.0   | dB                     |
| EIRP   | 48.0  | dBm                    |
| Channel Bandwidth  | 15 MHz  |                        |
| Link Symmetry  | 1 to 1  |                        |
| Spectrum Management Control  | i_DFS   |                        |
| Lower Center Frequency   | 5736  | MHz                    |
| Tx Color Code  | A   |                        |
| Rx Color Code  | В   |                        |
| Installation Tones   | Disabled  |                        |
| Disarm Installa  | tion Agent  |                        |
|  |   |                        |

## 

In a synchronized network, links MUST be configured separately before bringing the whole network up.

## **Graphical install**

To aid the installation of wireless links two graphical installation aids have been introduced in this 600 Series system version.

- A PDA installation screen
- A larger installation screen available from the main HTTP management interface.

The design of the installation screen has been deliberately kept simple and uncluttered. An example of the installation screen is shown in Figure 6-40. Both the PDA and the large format installation screen have the same content and only differ in size. The PDA installation screen is 232 by 220 pixels to be compatible with the typical size of a PDA screen.

Figure 6-40 Graphical installation screen



The screen displays the receive power over the last three minutes. This will allow the installer to slowly sweep the antenna during installation and monitor the variation in signal strength with angular position. The screen automatically refreshes every three seconds.

The screen also displays the current state of the wireless link in two ways. First, the actual state of the wireless link is written in the top left corner of the screen. The instantaneous receive power bar also encodes the state of the wireless link using green to signify that the wireless link is up and red for all other states.

For the more technically, aware the installation metric is simply the instantaneous receive power in dBm + 100.

The PDA installation tool is accessed via a hidden URL http://<ip-address>/pda.cgi. It should be noted that this link is only available after the user has logged in as system administrator.

The large screen version of the graphical user interface is available as a submenu option of the installation wizard.

\_\_\_\_\_

## Upgrading the PTP 600

## Checking capability summary

Perform this task to check that the currently licensed capabilities (security level, encryption and group access) of the PTP 600 meet the operator's requirements.

To check the capability summary, proceed as follows:

Procedure 6-1 Check capability summary

| 1 | From the left hand menu, select <b>License Key.</b> The Software License Key page is displayed (Figure 6-41). |
|---|---|
| 2 | Check the attributes in the Capability summary section (Table 6-8).   |
| 3 | If the current capabilities do not meet the operator's requirements, then determine the new requirements.     |

Figure 6-41 Software License Key page

| Software License Key   |   |  |
|--|---|--|
| A valid software license key is required before installation of the PTP (Point to<br>Point) wireless link can commence. If you do not have a valid license key please<br>contact your distributor. |   |  |
| License key data en  | try                                     |  |
| Attributes   | Value Units                             |  |
| License Key  | 5320-1d0d-85d8-a705-4069-d2cc-1ad8-98f3 |  |
|  | Validate license key Reset Form         |  |
| Capability summary<br>Attributes   | Value Units                             |  |
| Product Name   | Motorola PTP 45600 Full                 |  |
| MAC Address  | 00:04:56:88:00:12                       |  |
| Region Code  | Region Code 23                          |  |
| FIPS Security Level  | FIP S                                   |  |
| Encryption Algorithm   | AES 128 & 256-bit (Rijndael)            |  |
| Frequency Variant  | 4500 MHz                                |  |
| Bandwidth Variant  | 30 MHz                                  |  |
| Group Access   | Enabled                                 |  |

| <b>Table 6-8</b> ( | Capability summary | <sup>,</sup> attributes |
|--------------------|--------------------|-------------------------|
|--------------------|--------------------|-------------------------|

| Attribute            | Meaning   |
|----------------------|---|
| Product Name         | The name of the PTP 600 product variant.  |
| MAC Address          | The MAC address of the PTP 600.   |
| Region Code          | The region code prohibits the wireless unit from<br>operating outside the regulated limits. An invalid region<br>code indicates a corrupted license key.  |
| FIPS Security Level  | The maximum configurable security level.  |
| Encryption Algorithm | The encryption algorithms available for use at the wireless interface of the ODU. Encryption algorithm and keys must be the same at BOTH ends of the link for it to function correctly. This attribute is only displayed if the current license key permits encryption. |
| Frequency Variant    | Frequency variant of the wireless unit.   |
| Bandwidth Variant    | Bandwidth variant of the wireless unit.   |
| Group Access         | Indicates whether or not group access is enabled.   |

### Using access keys to generate a new license key

The PTP 600 is supplied with a factory default license key. Perform this task to generate a new license key to activate new licensed capabilities (security level, encryption or group access).

Before starting this task, perform Checking capability summary on page 6-77.

To generate a new license key, proceed as follows:

Procedure 6-2 Use an access key to generate a license key

| 1 | Purchase the required new capabilities from the Motorola authorized Point-To-Point dealer who supplied the PTP 600 link.<br>The dealer will supply one or more access keys. |
|---|---|
| 2 | Go to the PTP web support page at <u>http://www.motorola.com/ptp/support</u> and select <b>Key Generator</b> . The PTP License Key Generator form should be displayed.      |
| 3 | Enter the required details, including the access keys supplied by the dealer.   |
| 4 | Submit the web form.  |
|   | The PTP License Key Generator will respond with the new license key.  |

## Entering a license key

Perform this task to enter a new license key (when upgrading licensed capabilities).

Before starting this task, ensure that the license key is available. If it is necessary to upgrade the licensed capabilities of an existing unit, then perform the following tasks first:

- Checking capability summary on page 6-77
- Using access keys to generate a new license key on page 6-79

To upgrade the unit to a new license key, proceed as follows:

Procedure 6-3 Upgrade unit to a new license key

| 1 | From the left hand menu, select <b>License Key</b> . The Software License Key page is displayed (Figure 6-41).                |
|---|---|
| 2 | Enter the new License Key.  |
| 3 | Select <b>Validate license key</b> . If the license key is valid, the Reboot Wireless Unit dialog is displayed (Figure 6-42). |
| 4 | Select <b>Reboot Wireless Unit</b> . The Reboot Confirmation dialog is displayed (Figure 6-43).                               |
| 5 | Select <b>OK</b> . The reboot progress message is displayed. On completion, the unit restarts with the new license key.       |

#### Figure 6-42 Reboot Wireless Unit dialog

| Reboot Wireless Unit   |
|--|
| The new license key has been accepted. The system now requires a reboot<br>before any new features can be accessed |
| Reboot Wireless Unit   |

### Figure 6-43 Reboot Confirmation dialog

| http://169.254.1.1                         | × |  |
|--|---|--|
| Are you sure you want to REBOOT this unit? |   |  |
| OK Cancel                                  |   |  |

### Saving and restoring system configuration

The save and restore feature allows the system administrator to save and restore the operational configuration of the units. Motorola recommends that the configuration should be saved immediately after a successful link installation and immediately before a software upgrade. In the unlikely event that a unit has to be replaced in the field, the replacement unit can be reconfigured by restoring the saved configuration file.

### Saving the configuration file

Perform this task to save the operational configuration of the units.

To save the configuration file, proceed as follows:

Procedure 6-4 Save configuration file

| 1 | From the left hand menu, select <b>Configuration</b> , <b>Save And Restore</b> . The Save & Restore Configuration page is displayed (Figure 6-44). |
|---|--|
| 2 | Select Save Configuration File.  |
| 3 | Save the configuration file to a PC hard drive.  |

The configuration file format is:

MAC-mm-mm\_IP-iii-iii-iii.cfg

Where:

ls:

mm-mm-mm iii-iii-iii MAC address of unit

## 

Internet Explorer inspects the content of any downloadable file and decides whether to treat the file as ASCII or binary. As a result of this feature, Internet Explorer always treats the configuration file as ASCII and attempts to display it instead of downloading it. Firefox makes no such assumption.

Figure 6-44 Save & Restore Configuration page

| Save & Restore Configuration   |  |  |
|--|--|--|
| Save Configuration   |  |  |
| A snapshot of the latest system configuration can be saved to a file as a backup. The file can then be<br>used to restore this unit to a known state, or configure a replacement unit to the same state. The<br>configuration values are encrypted for security. |  |  |
| Click the button below to save the configuration file  |  |  |
| Save Configuration File  |  |  |
|  |  |  |
| Restore Configuration  |  |  |
| Note: this utility will only restore configuration files that were saved using software version 09.00.   |  |  |
| Please select the configuration file to restore  |  |  |
| Browse   |  |  |
| Restore Configuration File and Reboot  |  |  |

### Restoring the configuration file

Perform this task to restore the operational configuration of the unit.

Before starting this task, ensure that:

- The configuration file of the old (faulty) unit has been saved.
- The new (replacement) unit has been installed.
- The license key of the old unit has been entered in the new unit.

To restore the configuration file, proceed as follows:

### Procedure 6-5 Restore configuration file

| 1 | From the left hand menu, select <b>Configuration</b> , <b>Save And Restore</b> . The Save & Restore Configuration page is displayed (Figure 6-44). |
|---|--|
| 2 | Select <b>Browse</b> and navigate to the PC folder containing the saved configuration file (.cfg).   |
| 3 | Select Restore Configuration File and Reboot.  |
| 4 | Select <b>OK</b> to confirm the restore.   |
|   | The configuration file is uploaded and used to reconfigure the new unit to the same state as the old unit. On completion, the unit reboots.        |
## **Upgrading PTP 600 software**

Perform this task to upgrade the units to a new version of PTP 600 operational software.

### 

Ensure that the remote end of the link is upgraded first using the wireless connection, and then the local end can be upgraded. Otherwise, the remote end may not be accessible.

### 

Ensure that the correct units are upgraded, as units cannot be downgraded afterwards.

# 

Before performing a software upgrade, save the configuration as described in Saving and restoring system configuration on page 6-81. In the unlikely event that a unit has to be replaced in the field, the replacement unit can be reconfigured by restoring the saved configuration file.

To upgrade the software, proceed as follows:

#### Procedure 6-6 Upgrade software

| 1 | Download and save the new software image (PTP 600-nn-mm.dld2) from <u>http://www.motorola.com/ptp/support</u> .  |
|---|--|
| 2 | From the left hand menu, select <b>Software Upgrade</b> . The Software Upgrade page is displayed (Figure 6-45).  |
| 3 | Select <b>Browse</b> . Navigate to the folder containing the downloaded software image and select <b>Open</b> .  |
| 4 | Select <b>Upload Software Image</b> . The Software Upgrade Confirmation page is displayed (Figure 6-46). If the upgrade is taking the ODU into or out of FIPS mode, an additional warning is displayed stating that the upgrade will cause automatic erasure of the critical security parameters (CSPs). |

| 5 | Select <b>Program Software Image into Non-Volatile Memory</b> . The Progress Tracker page is displayed (Figure 6-47). The upgrade process should not be interrupted, as this can result in a corrupt main software image, which will result in the recovery image been booted at the next reset cycle. |
|---|--|
|   | On completion, the Software Upgrade Complete page is displayed (Figure 6-48).  |
| 6 | Select <b>Reboot Wireless Unit</b> . Select <b>OK</b> to confirm (Figure 6-49). The unit reboots with the new software installed.  |
|   | The reboot process will take up to 120 seconds. During this time it will not be possible to communicate with the unit.   |
| 7 | After the reboot, check that the required software image is loaded and running.  |

# 

If communication with the unit is not restored after 120 seconds , this could indicate a problem with the memory update process. If this happens, enter "Recovery Mode" as described in Using recovery mode on page 7-20.

#### Figure 6-45 Software Upgrade page

| Software Upgrade   |  |  |  |  |  |
|--|--|--|--|--|--|
| This utility allows an operator to upgrade a PTP wireless unit's operational software. |  |  |  |  |  |
| Current software image description *   |  |  |  |  |  |
| Software Version: 58600-04-99  |  |  |  |  |  |
| Boot monitor :: Boot-01-01   |  |  |  |  |  |
| Recovery software image :: Recovery-02-01  |  |  |  |  |  |
|  |  |  |  |  |  |
| Please select a new software image   |  |  |  |  |  |
| Browse   |  |  |  |  |  |
| Upload Software Image  |  |  |  |  |  |
| llext >>   |  |  |  |  |  |

### Figure 6-46 Software Upgrade Confirmation page

| Software U   | lpgrade: Are You Sure?   |                                |
|--|--|--------------------------------|
| The tables below co<br>been downloaded. P<br>software upgrade. | mpare the image stored in the primary software bank with the image<br>Press the "Program Software Image into Non-Volatile Memory" button | that has just<br>to accept the |
| Current software   | image description  |                                |
| Software Version: 5  | 8600-04-99   |                                |
|  |  |                                |
| Uploaded software  | e image description  |                                |
| Software Version: 5  | 8600-04-90   |                                |
|  | Program Software Image into Non-Volatile Memory  |                                |
|  |  | Next ኦ                         |

## Figure 6-47 Upgrade Progress Tracker

| Upgrade Progress Tracker    |      |
|-----------------------------|------|
| Erasing FLASH memory banks: |      |
|                             | :22% |
| Overall Upgrade Progress    |      |
|                             | :15% |
|                             |      |

### Figure 6-48 Software Upgrade Complete page

| Software Upgrade Complete  |   |  |  |  |  |
|--|---|--|--|--|--|
| The software upgrade was comple<br>required. Please use the 'Reboot Wi | ted Successfully. To complete the upgrade a system reboot is<br>reless Unit' button below to reboot the unit. |  |  |  |  |
| Current software image description                                     |   |  |  |  |  |
| Software Version: 58600-04-90  |   |  |  |  |  |
|  | Reboot Wireless Unit  |  |  |  |  |
| < Back   |   |  |  |  |  |

## Figure 6-49 Reboot confirmation pop up



## File name style for FIPS validated software

FIPS validated software images are indicated by a FIPS- prefix to the file name, for example: FIPS-PTP600-08-50. DLD2.

## Remote software upgrade by TFTP

This section describes how to upgrade the PTP 600 software remotely using Trivial FTP (TFTP) triggered by SNMP.

To perform a remote software upgrade, follow this procedure:

- 1. Set tFTP attibutes as described in Setting tFTP attributes on page 6-88.
- Monitor tFTP attributes as described in Monitoring tFTP attributes on page 6-89.
- 3. When the upgrade is complete, reboot the ODU to run the newly loaded software image as described in Reboot on page 7-27.

#### Setting tFTP attributes

Set the following tFTP attributes:

#### tFTPServerIPAddress

This is the IP address of the TFTP server from which the TFTP software upgrade file Name will be retrieved.

For example, to set the TFTP server IP address for unit 10.10.10.10 to 10.10.10.1, enter this command:

snmpset\_d.exe -v 2c -c public 10.10.10.10 .iso.3.6.1.4.1.17713.1.9.5.0 a
10.10.10.1

#### tFTPServerPortNumber

This setting is optional. The port number of the TFTP server from which the TFTP software upgrade file name will be retrieved (default=69).

#### tFTPSoftwareUpgradeFileName

This is the filename of the software upgrade to be loaded from the TFTP server.

For example, to set the TFTP software upgrade filename on 10.10.10.10 to "B1095.dld", enter this command:

```
snmpset_d.exe -v 2c -c public 10.10.10.10 .iso.3.6.1.4.1.17713.1.9.7.0 s
B1095.dld
```

#### tFTPStartSoftwareUpgrade

Write '1' to this attribute to start the TFTP software upgrade process. The attribute will be reset to 0 when the upgrade process has finished.

UNDER DEVELOPMENT

For example, enter this command:

```
snmpset_d.exe -v 2c -c public 10.10.10.10 .iso.3.6.1.4.1.17713.1.9.8.0 i
1
```

#### Monitoring tFTP attributes

Monitor the values of the following tFTP attributes:

#### tFTPSoftwareUpgradeStatus

This is the current status of the TFTP software upgrade process. Values:

- idle(0)
- uploadinprogress(1)
- uploadsuccessfulprogrammingFLASH(2)
- upgradesuccessfulreboottorunthenewsoftwareimage(3)
- upgradefailed(4).

For example, enter this command:

```
snmpget_d.exe -v 2c -c public 10.10.10.10 .iso.3.6.1.4.1.17713.1.9.9.0
```

#### tFTPSoftwareUpgradeStatusText

This describes the status of the TFTP software upgrade process, including any error details.

For example, enter this command:

```
snmpget_d.exe -v 2c -c public 10.10.10.10 .iso.3.6.1.4.1.17713.1.9.10.0
```

#### tFTPSoftwareUpgradeStatusAdditionalText

This is used if tFTPSoftwareUpgradeStatusText is full and there are more than 255 characters to report. It contains additional text describing the status of the TFTP software upgrade process, including any error details.

For example, enter this command:

```
snmpget_d.exe -v 2c -c public 10.10.10.10 .iso.3.6.1.4.1.17713.1.9.11.0
```

# Managing security

.....

## Configuring user accounts

Perform this task to ensure that user access to the ODU is controlled in accordance with the network operator's security policy. The following user account options may be configured:

- Best practice passwords.
- Auto logout period. .
- Maximum number of login attempts. .
- Login attempt lockout period.
- Password expiry period.
- Minimum password change period.
- Identity-based user accounts.

# 

To ensure that the ODU is compliant with the security requirements of FIPS 140-2, the above options must all be enabled. For more information, refer to Configuring FIPS 140-2 mode on page 6-108.

If identity-based user accounts are enabled, this task may only be performed by a Security Officer.

To set these options, proceed as follows:

Procedure 6-7 Configure user accounts

| 1 | From the left hand menu, select <b>User Accounts</b> . The User Accounts page is displayed (Figure 6-50). |
|---|---|
| 2 | Review and update the user accounts attributes (Table 6-9).   |
| 3 | If any attributes have been updated, select Submit User Account Updates.                                  |

| User Accounts   |   |                      |                |          |                  |         |  |
|-----------------|---|----------------------|----------------|----------|------------------|---------|--|
| User            | User Account Manamegent   |                      |                |          |                  |         |  |
| Attributes Valu |   | Value                | Units          |          |                  |         |  |
| Best P          | ractice Passwords   | ⊙ Disabled ○ Enabled |                |          |                  |         |  |
| Auto L          | ogout Period  | 10                   | minute         | 3        |                  |         |  |
| Maxim           | um Number Of Login Attempts   | 3                    |                |          |                  |         |  |
| Login           | Attempt Lockout Period  | 1                    | minutes        | 3        |                  |         |  |
| Passw           | vord Expiry Period  | 0                    | days           |          |                  |         |  |
| Minimu          | Im Password Change Period   | 0                    | minute         | 3        |                  |         |  |
| Identity        | y Based User Accounts   | ODisabled ODisabled  |                |          |                  |         |  |
|                 |   | <b>D</b> -1-         |                | 0        | B                | D'      |  |
| user            | name  | Role                 |                | Password | Password Confirm | Disable |  |
| 1               | security  | Security Administrat | <mark>v</mark> | •••••    |                  |         |  |
| 2               | admin   | System Administrate  | r v            | •••••    | •••••            |         |  |
| 3               | readonly  | Read Only            | ~              | •••••    | •••••            |         |  |
| 4               | readonly2   | Read Only            | $\sim$         |          |                  |         |  |
| 5               | readonly3   | Read Only            | ~              |          | •••••            |         |  |
| 6               | readonly4   | Read Only            | $\sim$         |          |                  |         |  |
| 7               | readonly5   | Read Only            | ~              |          |                  |         |  |
| 8               | readonly6   | Read Only            | $\sim$         | •••••    | •••••            |         |  |
| 9               | readonly7   | Read Only            | $\sim$         |          |                  |         |  |
| 10              | readonly8   | Read Only            | $\sim$         | •••••    | •••••            |         |  |
|                 | Submit User Account Updates Reset All Accounts Back to Default Settings |                      |                |          |                  |         |  |

## Figure 6-50 User Accounts page

| Attribute                           | Meaning   |  |  |  |
|-------------------------------------|---|--|--|--|
| Best Practice Passwords             | Disable or enable best practice password rules.   |  |  |  |
|                                     | When this is enabled, the following rules are applied to all passwords:   |  |  |  |
|                                     | Passwords are case sensitive.   |  |  |  |
|                                     | Password must contain at least eight characters.  |  |  |  |
|                                     | Passwords must contain at least:  |  |  |  |
|                                     | One uppercase letter.   |  |  |  |
|                                     | One lowercase letter.   |  |  |  |
|                                     | • One numeral.  |  |  |  |
|                                     | <ul> <li>One special character:<br/>!\"#\$%&amp;'()*+,/:;&lt;=&gt;?@[\]^_`{ }~</li> </ul>   |  |  |  |
| Auto Logout Period                  | The time without user activity that elapses before a user is automatically logged out (minutes).  |  |  |  |
| Maximum Number of<br>Login Attempts | The maximum number of login attempts (with incorrect password) that are allowed before a user is locked out.  |  |  |  |
| Login Attempt Lockout<br>Period     | The time that elapses before a locked out user is allowed to log in again (minutes).  |  |  |  |
| Password Expiry Period              | The time that elapses before a password expires (days). When<br>a password has expired, the user is forced to change it.  |  |  |  |
| Minimum Password<br>Change Period   | The minimum time that elapses before a user is allowed to change a password (minutes).  |  |  |  |
| Identity Based User                 | Enable or disable identity-based user accounts.   |  |  |  |
| Accounts                            | When this is disabled, access to the web interface is controlled<br>by a single system administration password, and the user<br>account data entry table is disabled. |  |  |  |
|                                     | When this is enabled, the user account data entry table is<br>enabled. For more information, refer to Creating or updating<br>identity-based users on page 6-93.      |  |  |  |

#### Table 6-9 User accounts attributes

## Creating or updating identity-based users

Perform this task to allow multiple users (from one to ten) to access the ODU with different levels of access. There are three defined levels of access: Security Officer, System Administrator and Read Only.

# 

To ensure that the ODU is compliant with the security requirements of FIPS 140-2, identity-based user accounts must be enabled. For more information, refer to Configuring FIPS 140-2 mode on page 6-108.

If identity-based user accounts are already enabled, this task may only be performed by a user with role set to Security Officer.

To create or update identity-based user accounts, proceed as follows:

**Procedure 6-8** Configure user accounts

| 1 | From the left hand menu, select <b>User Accounts</b> . The User Accounts page is displayed (Figure 6-50). |
|---|---|
| 2 | Set the Identity Based User Accounts attribute to "Enabled" (if it is not already set).                   |
| 3 | Create or update up to 10 user accounts (Table 6-10).   |
| 4 | If any accounts have been created or updated, select <b>Submit User Account Updates</b> .                 |

| Attribute        | Meaning   |  |  |
|------------------|---|--|--|
| Name             | Enter a user name.  |  |  |
| Role             | Select a role from the list:  |  |  |
|                  | Security Officer  |  |  |
|                  | System Administrator  |  |  |
|                  | Read Only   |  |  |
|                  |   |  |  |
|                  | At least one user must be assigned the Security Officer role.   |  |  |
| Password         | Enter a password for the user. If Best Practice Passwords are enabled, all passwords must obey the rules (Table 6-9). |  |  |
| Password Confirm | Retype the password to confirm.   |  |  |
| Disable          | Tick the box to disable a user account.   |  |  |

| tes |
|-----|
| te  |

## Changing own user password

Perform this task to change a user password.

## 

This method is used for any user to change his/her own password. The title of the page changes between 'Change System Administrator Password', 'Change Security Officer Password', or 'Change Read Only Password'.

A security officer can change the passwords of other users using the User Accounts page, as described in Creating or updating identity-based users on page 6-93.

From the left hand menu, select **Change Password**. The **Change Password** page is displayed (Figure 6-51). Enter and confirm the new password (the factory default is blank). If Best Practice Passwords are enabled, the new password must obey the rules (Table 6-9).

#### **Figure 6-51** Change Password page (System Administration example)

| Change System Administration Passwo | ord |
|-------------------------------------|-----|
| Current Password                    |     |
| New Password                        |     |
| Confirm New Password                |     |
| Change Administration Password      |     |
|                                     |     |

The password may contain any combination of characters, up to 31 characters in length.

## Controlling access to the HTTP interface

The attribute **HTTP Access Enabled** allows a user to stop any access to a unit via HTTP at the HTTP web interface. The default value for this control is set to 'Yes', which means that the unit can be accessed using the HTTP web interface. If the option 'No' is selected, then a warning is displayed as shown in Figure 6-65.

The HTTP interface should be disabled if the HTTPS interface is configured. See Configuring HTTPS/TLS using the Security Wizard on page 6-98.

If the HTTP, HTTPS, Telnet and SNMP interfaces are all disabled, then it will be necessary to use the Recovery image to reset IP & Ethernet Configuration back to factory defaults to re-enable the interfaces.

## Controlling access to the Telnet interface

The attribute **Telnet Access Enabled** allows a user to stop any access to a unit via the telnet interface. The default value for this control is set to 'Yes', which means that the unit can be accessed using the telnet interface.

## Enabling AES encryption at the wireless interface

AES link encryption is only available to users who have purchased an appropriate license key. When the license key has been entered, AES link encryption can be configured via one of the following pages:

- Step 2 of the Installation pages (Figure 6-31).
- Step 5 of the Security Wizard (Figure 6-59).
- The System Configuration page (Figure 6-8).

### 

Configuring link encryption will necessitate a PTP 600 service outage. Therefore it is recommended that the configuration process be scheduled during an appropriate period of low link utilization.

To configure AES link encryption from the Step 2: Wireless Configuration page, proceed as follows:

| <b>Procedure 6-9</b> | <b>Configuring AES</b> | link encryption |
|----------------------|------------------------|-----------------|
|----------------------|------------------------|-----------------|

| 1 | Open two browsers, one for each end of the link.   |
|---|--|
| 2 | Navigate to the Step 2: Wireless Configuration page for each end of the link (Figure $6-31$ ).   |
| 3 | At both ends of the link select the same Encryption Algorithm, either 'AES 128-<br>bit (Rijndael)' or 'AES 256-bit (Rijndael)' (Figure 6-52).  |
| 4 | At both ends of the link enter and confirm the same encryption key.<br>The key consists of 32 or 64 case insensitive hexadecimal characters. The same<br>key must be entered at both ends of the link. Failure to enter the same key will<br>cause the link to fail. |
| 5 | Submit configuration on both ends of the link, but do not reboot.  |
| 6 | Reboot both ends of the link (Figure 6-53). The software is designed to allow five seconds so that a user can command both ends of the link to reboot before the wireless link drops.  |

## Figure 6-52 Step 2: Wireless Configuration page AES attributes

| Encryption Algorithm   | ○ None |  |
|------------------------|--------|--|
| Encryption Key         |        |  |
| Confirm Encryption Key |        |  |

### Figure 6-53 Configuration reboot screen

| The Configuration Changes Require a<br>System Reboot   |
|--|
| The configuration changes you requested can only be activated via a system reboot. Would you like to reboot the wireless unit now? |
| Reboot Wireless Unit   |
|  |

# Configuring HTTPS/TLS using the Security Wizard

Perform this task to review and configure HTTPS/TLS security related parameters.

### **Current security summary**

To review HTTPS/TLS security related parameters, proceed as follows:

Procedure 6-10 HTTPS/TLS using the Security Wizard

| 1 | From the left hand menu, select <b>Security Administration</b> . The Current Security Summary page is displayed (Figure 6-54). |
|---|--|
| 2 | Review the summary.  |
| 3 | If any updates are required, select <b>Continue to Security Wizard</b> .   |

The Security Wizard is only available when both of the following conditions are true:

- Identity-based user accounts are disabled, or identity-based user accounts are enabled and the user's role is Security Officer.
- The wireless unit has a licence key with either 128-bit or 256-bit AES link encryption enabled.

If these conditions are not both true, the Current Security Summary page prevents execution of the wizard.

## Figure 6-54 Current Security Summary page

| Current Security Summary   |   |  |
|--|---|--|
| This page shows a summary of the current security configuration.<br>Press the 'Continue to Security Wizard' button below to change this configuration. |   |  |
| Security configuration   | I   |  |
| Attributes   | Value Units   |  |
| Key of Keys  | Configured  |  |
| Private Key  | Configured  |  |
| Public Certificate   | Configured  |  |
| User Defined<br>Security Banner  | This computing resource is the property of Motorola. Computing resource(s)<br>and/or network(s) access are provided to support Motorola's business objectives.<br>Authorized persons may use Motorola computing resource(s) and network(s)<br>access only for approved purposes. Any misuse or misappropriation of such<br>resource(s) and/or network(s) access is expressly prohibited, and may result in<br>termination of access privileges, disciplinary action up to and including termination<br>of employment or contract, and/or civil and criminal penalties.<br>In accordance with the applicable law, Motorola reserves the right, with or without<br>notice, to monitor, audit, access, search, inspect, and/or review the content of any |  |
| DRNG Entropy   | Configured  |  |
| Wireless Encryption Key  | Configured  |  |
| HTTP Access Enabled  | Yes   |  |
| HTTP Port Number   | 80  |  |
| HTTPS Port Number  | 443   |  |
| Telnet Access Enabled  | Yes   |  |
| Telnet Port Number   | 23  |  |
|  | Continue to Security Wizard   |  |

### Step 1: Enter key of keys

The PTP600 uses a key of keys approach to encrypt all critical security parameters (CSPs). Erasing of the keys of keys will render all CSPs inaccessible.

Generate a key of keys encryption key using a FIPS approved key generator. The key length is dictated by the prevailing licence key. Licence keys with AES-128 will require a key of keys of 128-bits. Licence keys with AES-256 will require a key of keys of 256-bits. The key output should be in ASCII hexadecimal characters.

To enter the key of keys via the Security Wizard, proceed as follows:

Procedure 6-11 Enter the key of keys

| 1 | The Step 1: Enter Key of Keys page is displayed (Figure 6-55).  |
|---|---|
| 2 | Enter the generated key of keys in both the Key Of Keys and Confirm Key Of Keys fields. If the two values are not identical, an error message is displayed. |
| 3 | Select Next.  |

Figure 6-55 Step 1: Enter Key of Keys page

| Step 1: Enter Key of Keys  |          |  |
|--|----------|--|
| The wireless unit uses a key of keys strategy to encrypt all CSPs before they are stored in non<br>volatile memory. If the key of keys is erased or updated all previous archived encrypted CSPs will<br>be rendered inaccessible. |          |  |
| Key Of Keys  | ••••••   |  |
| Confirm Key<br>Of Keys   | ••••••   |  |
|  | llext >> |  |

### Step 2: TLS private key and public certificate

Generate the TLS private key and public certificate in either PKCS#1 or PKCS#5 format. The key pair payload MUST not be encrypted. The certificates must be encoded in ASN.1 DER format. Supported private key sizes are 1024.

To enter the TLS private key and public certificate via the Security Wizard, proceed as follows:

Procedure 6-12 Enter TLS private key and public certificate

| 1 | The Step 2: TLS Private Key and Public Certificate page is displayed (Figure 6-56).  |
|---|--|
| 2 | If a valid TLS private key exists, then an SHA-1 thumbprint of the key is displayed. If this key is correct, then take no action. Otherwise, select <b>Browse</b> and select the generated private key file (.der).                        |
| 3 | If a valid TLS public certificate exists, then an SHA-1 thumbprint of the certificate is displayed. If this certificate is correct, then take no action. Otherwise, select <b>Browse</b> and select the generated certificate file (.der). |
| 4 | Select Next.   |

Figure 6-56 Step 2: TLS Private Key and Public Certificate page



### Step 3: User security banner

The user security banner is displayed every time a user attempts to login to the wireless unit. Specify the contents of the banner as per the operator's network security policy.

To enter the user security banner via the Security Wizard, proceed as follows:

```
Procedure 6-13 Enter user security banner
```

| 1 | The Step 3: User Security Banner page is displayed (Figure 6-57). |
|---|---|
| 2 | Update the User Defined Security Banner field.                    |
| 3 | Select Next.  |

Figure 6-57 Step 3: User Security Banner page



### Step 4: Random number entropy input

The entropy input is used to seed the TLS random number generator . Generate the entropy input using a random number generator.

To enter the entropy input via the Security Wizard, proceed as follows:

#### Procedure 6-14 Enter random number entropy input

| 1 | The Step 4: Random Number Entropy Input page is displayed (Figure 6-58).   |
|---|--|
| 2 | If valid entropy input exists, then an SHA-1 thumbprint of the input is displayed. If<br>this input is correct, then take no action. Otherwise, enter the generated input in the<br>Entropy Input and Confirm Entropy Input fields. If the two values are not identical,<br>an error message is displayed. |
| 3 | Select Next.   |

#### Figure 6-58 Step 4: Random Number Entropy Input page

| Step 4: Enter Random Number Entropy Input  |                      |
|--|----------------------|
| Please enter 512-bits of entropy input to seed the internal random number algorithm. |                      |
| Click next to keep the existing Entropy Input  |                      |
| Thumbprint Algorithm: SHA-1  |                      |
| Thumbprint: ************************************                                     |                      |
| Entropy<br>Input   |                      |
| Confirm<br>Entropy<br>Input  |                      |
| Back   | Next <b>&gt;&gt;</b> |

### Step 5: Enter the wireless link encryption key

The wireless link encryption key is used to encrypt all traffic over the PTP600 wireless link.

To enter the wireless link encryption key via the Security Wizard, proceed as follows:

#### Procedure 6-15 Enter wireless link encryption key

| 1 | The Step 5: Enter The Wireless Link Encryption Key page is displayed (Figure 6-59).   |
|---|---|
| 2 | Select the applicable value in the Encryption Algorithm field.  |
| 3 | If a valid encryption key exists, then an SHA-1 thumbprint of the key is displayed. If<br>this key is correct, then take no action. Otherwise, enter the generated key in the<br>Wireless Link Encryption Key and Confirm Wireless Link Encryption Key fields. If the<br>two values are not identical, an error message is displayed. |
| 4 | Select Next.  |

**Figure 6-59** Step 5: Enter The Wireless Link Encryption Key page

| Step 5: Enter Wireless Link Encryption Key   |      |       |
|--|------|-------|
| The wireless link encryption key is used to encrypt/decrypt all data transmitted over the wireless link. |      |       |
| Attributes Value   |      | Units |
| Encryption<br>Algorithm O None O AES 128-bit (Rijndael) O AES 256-bit (Rijndael)                         |      |       |
| Encryption<br>Key  |      |       |
| Confirm<br>Encryption<br>Key   |      |       |
|  | Next | >>    |

### Step 6: HTTP and Telnet settings

The PTP 600 can be remotely managed in four ways: HTTPS, HTTP, Telnet or SNMP. HTTP is the most common and user-friendly. HTTP and Telnet are enabled and disabled in Step 6 of the Security Wizard. SNMP is configured via the Remote Management page, and is disabled by default.

To configure HTTP and Telnet via the Security Wizard, proceed as follows:

**Procedure 6-16** Configure HTTP and Telnet

| 1 | The Step 6: HTTP and Telnet Settings page is displayed (Figure 6-60). |
|---|---|
| 2 | Review and update the HTTP and Telnet attributes (Table 6-11).        |
| 3 | Select Next.  |

Figure 6-60 Step 6: HTTP and Telnet Settings page

# Step 6: Enter HTTP and Telnet Settings

There are a few ways to remotely manage the system i.e. HTTP, TELNET and/or SNMP. HTTP (this interface) is the most common and user-friendly. From here it is possible to configure HTTP and/or TELNET. SNMP is configured via the main Remote Management screen, and is disabled by default. Please see the field specific help for further information and default values.

WARNING: If HTTP, TELNET and SNMP are all disabled, further administrative access will not be possible (unless HTTPS is enabled). To re-gain access you will have to use the Recovery image and select "Reset IP and Ethernet Configuration". This will re-enable the HTTP/Telnet interfaces.

| Attributes                              | Value      | Units  |
|---|------------|--------|
| HTTP Access Enabled                     | 🔾 No 💿 Yes |        |
| HTTP Port Number                        | 80         |        |
| HTTPS Port Number                       | 443        |        |
| Telnet Access Enabled                   | 🔾 No 💿 Yes |        |
| Telnet Port Number                      | 23         |        |
| Kara Kara Kara Kara Kara Kara Kara Kara | I          | lext ⋗ |

п

| Attribute             | Meaning   |
|-----------------------|---|
| HTTP Access Enabled   | When this is set to 'No', the unit will not respond to any<br>requests on the HTTP port. When this is set to 'Yes', the unit<br>will repond to requests on the HTTP port.<br>Remote management via HTTPS is not affected by this setting. |
| HTTP Port Number      | The port number for HTTP access. A value of zero means the wireless unit uses the default port.   |
| HTTPS Port Number     | The port number for HTTPS access. A value of zero means the wireless unit uses the default port.          Image: Note HTTPS access is controlled by license key.  |
| Telnet Access Enabled | When this is set to 'No', the unit will not respond to any<br>requests on the Telnet port. When this is set to 'Yes', the unit<br>will repond to requests on the Telnet port.   |
| Telnet Port Number    | The port number for Telnet access. A value of zero means the wireless unit uses the default port.   |

| <b>Iddle 0-II</b> IIIIF and Temet attribute | Table 6-11 | and Telnet attribute |
|---|------------|----------------------|
|---|------------|----------------------|

## Step 7: Commit security configuration

Review all changes that have been made in the Security Wizard (Figure 6-61). To ensure that the changes take effect, select **Commit Security Configuration**.

Figure 6-61 Step 7: Commit Security Configuration page

| Step 7                                | : Commit Security Configuration  |  |  |  |
|---------------------------------------|--|--|--|--|
| Commit the a                          | Commit the security changes  |  |  |  |
| Attributes                            | Value Units  |  |  |  |
| Key of<br>Keys                        | Unchanged  |  |  |  |
| Private Key                           | Unchanged  |  |  |  |
| Public<br>Certificate                 | Unchanged  |  |  |  |
| User<br>Defined<br>Security<br>Banner | This computing resource is the property of Motorola. Computing resource(s)<br>and/or network(s) access are provided to support Motorola's business objectives.<br>Authorized persons may use Motorola computing resource(s) and network(s)<br>access only for approved purposes. Any misuse or misappropriation of such<br>resource(s) and/or network(s) access is expressly prohibited, and may result in<br>termination of access privileges, disciplinary action up to and including termination<br>of employment or contract, and/or civil and criminal penalties. |  |  |  |
| DRNG<br>Entropy                       | Unchanged  |  |  |  |
| Wireless<br>Encryption<br>Key         | Unchanged  |  |  |  |
|                                       |  |  |  |  |
| HTTP<br>Access<br>Enabled             | Yes  |  |  |  |
| HTTP Port<br>Number                   | 80   |  |  |  |
| HTTPS Port<br>Number                  | 443  |  |  |  |
| Telnet<br>Access<br>Enabled           | Yes  |  |  |  |
| Telnet Port<br>Number                 | 23   |  |  |  |
|                                       | Commit Security Configuration  |  |  |  |
| < Back                                |  |  |  |  |

## Configuring FIPS 140-2 mode

Perform this task to place a PTP 600 wireless unit into FIPS 140-2 secure mode. For more information on FIPS 140-2, refer to FIPS 140-2 on page 1-52.

Before starting this task, ensure that the following resources are available:

- A FIPS approved cryptographic key generator.
- A FIPS approved X509 RSA public / private key pair generator. The required output format is DER. For more information on DER format, refer to *ITU-T, OSI networking and system aspects Abstract Syntax Notation One (ASN.1), 07/2002.*
- A FIPS approved random number generator.
- An HTTPS enabled web browser supporting FIPS approved cipher specifications.

To configure the ODU to work in FIPS 140-2 mode, proceed as follows:

### Procedure 6-17 Configure FIPS 140-2 operation

| 1  | Inspect the ODU to confirm that silver tamper evident labels are attached (Figure 6-62 and Figure 6-63). If these labels are not present, do not proceed with FIPS 140-2 configuration. |
|----|---|
| 2  | Upgrade the ODU software to the latest image containing the FIPS 140-2 security features (system release 600-08-50 or later). Refer to Upgrading PTP 600 software on page 6-84.         |
| 3  | Check the capability summary in the Software License Key page to ensure that the current license key supports FIPS 140-2. Refer to Checking capability summary on page 6-77.            |
| 4  | If the current license key does not support FIPS 140-2:   |
|    | Obtain an access key and generate a new license key to support FIPS 140-2.<br>Refer to Using access keys to generate a new license key on page 6-79.                                    |
|    | Enter the new license key. Refer to Entering a license key on page 6-80.  |
| 5  | Configure user accounts to ensure that the ODU is compliant with the security requirements of FIPS 140-2. Refer to Configuring user accounts on page 6-90.                              |
| 6  | Create at least three identity-based used accounts. Refer to Creating or updating identity-based users on page 6-93.  |
| 7  | Log into the web interface as a security administrator user.  |
| 8  | Run the Security Wizard. Refer to Configuring HTTPS/TLS using the Security Wizard on page 6-98. The ODU reboots at the end of Security Wizard.  |
| 9  | The secure web server is now the main management tool for the ODU web interface. To enter the web interface, use the URL <u>https://169.254.1.1</u> .                                   |
| 10 | Go back to the Security Wizard and disabled HTTP and Telnet (if not already disabled). Refer to Step 6: HTTP and Telnet settings on page 6-105.   |

The FIPS 140-2 mode is indicated by a distinctive symbol displayed at the top of the navigation bar in the web-based interface, as shown in Figure 1-17.



Figure 6-62 Tamper evident label on side edge of ODU

Figure 6-63 Tamper evident label on top edge of ODU



## Zeroising critical security parameters

Critical security parameters (CSPs) are as follows:

- Key of keys.
- AES encryption keys for the wireless interface.
- Private key for the HTTPS/TLS interface.
- Entropy value for the HTTPS/TLS interface.
- User account passwords for the web-based interface.

To zeroize the CSPs, select **Zeroize CSPs** from the menu and then **Select Zeroize CSPs and Reboot Wireless Unit**. Confirm the reboot.

Alternatively, select the Zeroise CSPs option in Recovery mode.

# **Managing faults**

The Remote Management page (Figure 6-64) allows the system administrator to configure the remote management of the PTP 600 Series.

.....

| Remote Management              |                              |  |
|--------------------------------|------------------------------|--|
| HTTP and Teinet                |                              |  |
| Attributes                     | Value Units                  |  |
| HTTP Access Enabled            | 🔿 No 💿 Yes                   |  |
| Telnet Access Enabled          | 🔿 No 💿 Yes                   |  |
| Simple Network Managemer       | nt Protocol (SNMP)           |  |
| SNMP State                     | O Disabled 💿 Enabled         |  |
| SNMP Version                   | ⊙ v1/2c ○ v3                 |  |
|                                | Cold Start                   |  |
|                                | Wireless Link Up Down        |  |
|                                | DFS Channel Change           |  |
| SNMP Enabled Traps             | DFS Impulse Interference     |  |
|                                | Enabled Diagnostic Alarms    |  |
|                                | Authentication Failure       |  |
|                                | Ethernet Link Up Down        |  |
| SNMP Trap Version              | O v1 ⊙ v2c                   |  |
| SNMP Trap IP Address           | 0.0.0.0                      |  |
| SNMP Trap Port Number          | 162                          |  |
| SNMP Community String          | public                       |  |
| SNMP Port Number               | 161                          |  |
| Simple Mail Transfer Protoco   | ol (SMTP)                    |  |
| SMTP Email Alert               | ⊙ Disabled ○ Enabled         |  |
|                                | Wireless Link Up Down        |  |
|                                | DFS Channel Change           |  |
| SMTP Enabled Messages          | DFS Impulse Interference     |  |
|                                | Enabled Diagnostic Alarms    |  |
|                                | Ethernet Link Up Down        |  |
| SMTP Server IP Address         | 1 . 1 . 1 . 2                |  |
| SMTP Server Port Number        | 25                           |  |
| SMTP Source Email Address      | 1_1_100_17@motorola.com      |  |
| SMTP Destination Email Address | richard.carter@motorola.com  |  |
| Send SMTP Test Email           | ☐ Yes                        |  |
| Clock                          |                              |  |
| SNTP State                     | ⊙ Disabled ○ Enabled         |  |
| Set Time                       | 14 : 49 : 57                 |  |
| Set Date                       | 2010 💙 Jan 💙 20 💌            |  |
| Time Zone                      | GMT 00.00 💌                  |  |
| Daylight Saving                | O Disabled 📀 Enabled         |  |
| Submit Upda                    | ted Configuration Reset Form |  |

Figure 6-64 Remote Management page

## Supported Management Information Bases (MIBs)

The PTP 600 Series SNMP stack currently supports the following MIBs:

- MIB-II, RFC-1213, The PTP 600 Series supports the 'System Group' and 'Interfaces Group'.
- Bridge MIB, RFC-1493, The PTP 600 Series supports the 'dot1dBase Group' and the 'dot1dBasePortTable Group'.
- PTP 600 Series proprietary MIB
- RFC-2233 (High capacity counter) MIB
- WiMAX MIB

SNMP TRAPs supported:

- Cold Start
- Link Up
- Link Down
- DFS Channel Change
- DFS Impulsive Interference

Figure 6-65 Warning when disabling HTTP interface

| Windows I | Internet Explorer  |  |
|-----------|--|--|
| ?         | Click OK to confirm the disabling of the HTTP interface, Cancel to leave it enabled. If you have also disabled Telnet and SNMP then you will have to use the Recovery image to "Reset IP & Ethernet Configuration back to factory defaults" to re-enable the HTTP/Telnet interfaces. |  |
|           | Cancel   |  |

## **Diagnostics alarms**

A number of diagnostics alarms have been added to allow SNMP agents to receive traps and emails if required. These alarms are described in Home page alarm display on page 6-6. Checking the control "Enabled Diagnostic Alarms" in SNMP and/or SNTP selects all the alarms shown in Figure 6-66. Users can access the sub-menu "Diagnostic Alarms" to modify the alarms selected.

| Figure 6-66 | Diagnostic Alarms | s page |
|-------------|-------------------|--------|
|-------------|-------------------|--------|

| Diagnostic Alarms                       |                                 |  |  |  |  |
|---|---------------------------------|--|--|--|--|
| Attributes                              | Value Units                     |  |  |  |  |
| Enabled Diagnostic Alarms               | Region Code                     |  |  |  |  |
|   | 🗹 Install Status                |  |  |  |  |
|   | 🗹 Install Arm State             |  |  |  |  |
|   | Unit Out Of Calibration         |  |  |  |  |
|   | Incompatible Region Codes       |  |  |  |  |
|   | Incompatible Master And Slave   |  |  |  |  |
|   | Ethernet Configuration Mismatch |  |  |  |  |
|   | No Wireless Channel Available   |  |  |  |  |
|   | SNTP Syncronisation Failed      |  |  |  |  |
|   | Wireless Link Disabled Warning  |  |  |  |  |
|   | Ethernet Link Disabled Warning  |  |  |  |  |
|   | Ethernet Link Status            |  |  |  |  |
|   | Fiber Link Status               |  |  |  |  |
|   | Telecoms Channel A Status       |  |  |  |  |
|   | Telecoms Channel B Status       |  |  |  |  |
|   | Telecoms Channel A Loopback     |  |  |  |  |
|   | Telecoms Channel B Loopback     |  |  |  |  |
|   | TDD Synchronization Alarm       |  |  |  |  |
|   | Link Mode Optimization Mismatch |  |  |  |  |
| Submit Updated Configuration Reset Form |                                 |  |  |  |  |

For a copy of the Motorola proprietary version 1 and version 2 MIB RFCs please consult the installation CD.

## **Configuring SNMP notifications**

Perform this task to enable the PTP 600 to generate Simple Network Management Protocol (SNMP) traps.

If SNMP is enabled, then the PTP 600 generates SNMP traps when certain events occur, and sends the traps to the network SNMP management agent, which notifies the system administrator.

To configure SNMP notifications, proceed as follows:

Procedure 6-18 Select the SNMP version

| 1 | From the left hand menu, select <b>Remote Management</b> . The Remote Management page is displayed (Figure 6-64). |
|---|---|
| 2 | Update the SNMP attributes (Table 6-12).  |
| 3 | Select <b>Submit Updated Configuration</b> . The Configuration Change Reboot dialog is displayed.                 |
| 4 | Select Reboot Wireless Unit. The Reboot Confirmation dialog is displayed  |
| 5 | Select <b>OK</b> . The reboot progress message is displayed. On completion, the unit restarts.                    |

#### **Table 6-12** SNMP attributes in the Remote Management page

| Attribute          | Meaning   |
|--------------------|---|
| SNMP State         | 'Disabled' means that SNMP traps are not generated.   |
|                    | 'Enabled' means that SNMP traps will be generated in<br>response to selected events, and sent to the network<br>management system.  |
| SNMP Version       | Select the SNMP protocol version to be used for SNMP traps.   |
|                    | If 'v1/2c' is selected, the SNMP Trap Version, Trap IP Address,<br>Trap Port Number and Community String attributes are<br>displayed. If 'v3' is selected, these attributes are hidden. |
| SNMP Enabled Traps | Select the events that will generate SNMP traps.  |
| SNMP Trap Version  | Select protocol version v1 or v2c.  |

| Attribute                | Meaning   |  |  |  |
|--------------------------|---|--|--|--|
| SNMP Trap IP Address     | Enter the IP address that will receive all SNMP traps.<br>This will normally be the network management system,<br>but it may be a separate trap receiver.   |  |  |  |
|                          | To disable trap generation, enter 0.0.0.0 in the IP Address.  |  |  |  |
| SNMP Trap Port<br>Number | Enter the port number of either the networked SNMP manager or trap receiver. By convention, the default port number is 162.   |  |  |  |
| SNMP Community<br>String | The SNMP community string acts like a password<br>between the network management system and the<br>distributed SNMP clients (PTP 800 CMUs). Only if the<br>community string is configured correctly on all SNMP<br>entities can the flow of management information take<br>place. By convention the default value is set to 'public'. |  |  |  |
| SNMP Port Number         | Enter the port that the SNMP agent is listening to for<br>commands from a management system. By convention,<br>the default port number is 161.  |  |  |  |
| WiMAX Control            | Enables and Disables the WiMAX (802.16) MIB. This control is only displayed when 'Fixed Frequency' is selected during installation.   |  |  |  |

## SMTP (Simple Mail Transport Protocol)

The SMTP client is an alternative method for the PTP 600 Series to alert a system administrator when there are or have been system errors:

#### **SMTP Email Alert**

This attribute controls the activation of the SMTP client.

#### **SMTP Enabled Messages**

The SMTP Enabled Messages attribute controls which email alerts the unit will send.

#### **SMTP IP Address**

The IP address of the networked SMTP server.

#### **SMTP Port Number**

The SMTP Port Number is the port number used by the networked SMTP server. By convention the default value for the port number is 25.

UNDER DEVELOPMENT

#### **SMTP Source Email Address**

The email address used by the PTP 600 Series to log into the SMTP server. This must be a valid email address that will be accepted by your SMTP Server.

#### **SMTP Destination Email Address**

The email address to which the PTP 600 Series will send the alert messages.

## **SNTP (Simple Network Time Protocol)**

The SNTP client allows the PTP 600 Series to obtain accurate date and time updates from a networked timeserver. The system time is used for SNMP and event logging.

#### **SNTP State**

When enabled, the Remote Management web page permits the following attributes to be set:

#### **SNTP IP Address**

The IP address of the networked SNTP server.

#### **SNTP Port Number**

The port number of the networked SNTP server. By convention the default value for the port number is 123.

#### **SNTP Poll Interval**

The period at which the SNTP client polls the server for time correction updates. Default 1 hour. If for any reason an SNTP poll fails, the client will automatically perform 3 retries before waiting for the user defined poll period.

#### **Time Zone**

The time zone is a fixed offset from GMT that is added to the SNTP time to allow the expression of time in all geographic time zones.

#### **Daylight Saving**

Allows a fixed offset of one hour to be added to the SNTP time in order to reflect the local daylight saving time.

## Setting the clock

The PTP 600 Series has a system clock which can be used to supply accurate date and time information in the absence of a SNTP server. The system clock is battery backed and will continue to operate for several days if the PTP 600 Series has been switched off.

#### **SNTP State**

If the SNTP State is set to "Disabled", see Figure 6-64, then the Remote Management web page allows the following attributes to be set:

#### Set Time

Shows the current time in 24 hour mode. The three editable fields display hours minutes and seconds.

#### Set Date

Displays the current date. The year, month and day can be set using the drop-down selection boxes.

### **Time Zone**

See Setting the clock on page 6-118.

#### **Daylight Saving**

See Setting the clock on page 6-118.

\_\_\_\_\_

# Managing performance

## **Statistics**

The System Statistics page (Figure 6-67) displays some key statistics of the Ethernet Bridge and the underlying wireless performance.

The numbers in brackets display the number of packets received since the last page refresh.

| System Statistics                         |  |           |            |        |       |  |  |  |  |
|---|--|-----------|------------|--------|-------|--|--|--|--|
| Attributes                                | Value  |           |            |        | Units |  |  |  |  |
| System Histograms                         |  |           |            |        |       |  |  |  |  |
| Transmit Power                            | 20.0,  | 19.9,     | -15.0,     | 20.0   | dBm   |  |  |  |  |
| Receive Power                             | -44.1,   | -50.6,    | -110.0,    | -50.1  | dBm   |  |  |  |  |
| Vector Error                              | 7.2,   | -29.4,    | -39.0,     | -29.6  | dB    |  |  |  |  |
| Link Loss                                 | 102.8,   | 99.7,     | 0.0,       | 101.1  | dB    |  |  |  |  |
| Signal Strength Ratio                     | 1.0,   | -2.9,     | -3.3,      | -2.9   | dB    |  |  |  |  |
| Transmit Data Rate                        | 150.01,  | 147.56,   | 0.00,      | 150.01 | Mbps  |  |  |  |  |
| Receive Data Rate                         | 150.01,  | 137.18,   | 0.00,      | 150.01 | Mbps  |  |  |  |  |
| Aggregate Data Rate                       | 300.02,  | 284.74,   | 0.00,      | 300.02 | Mbps  |  |  |  |  |
| Histogram Measurement Period              | 00:51:15   |           |            |        |       |  |  |  |  |
| Reset System Histogram Measurement Period |  |           |            |        |       |  |  |  |  |
|   |  |           |            |        |       |  |  |  |  |
| Attributes                                | Value  |           |            |        | Units |  |  |  |  |
| Data Port Counters                        |  |           |            |        |       |  |  |  |  |
| Ethernet Tx Packets                       | 1.794 (+1  | 18)       |            |        |       |  |  |  |  |
| Ethernet Rx Packets                       | 53 766 (+123)  |           |            |        |       |  |  |  |  |
| Management Port Counters                  |  | ,         |            |        |       |  |  |  |  |
| Packets To Internal Stack                 | 6,647 (+4  | 2)        |            |        |       |  |  |  |  |
| Packets From Internal Stack               | 1.736 (+66)  |           |            |        |       |  |  |  |  |
| Wireless Port Counters and                | Perform  | ance Inf  | ormatio    | n      |       |  |  |  |  |
| Wireless Tx Packets                       | 54,307 (+  | 175)      |            |        |       |  |  |  |  |
| Wireless Rx Packets                       | 88 (+0)  |           |            |        |       |  |  |  |  |
| Link Symmetry                             | 1 to 1   |           |            |        |       |  |  |  |  |
| Link Capacity                             | 300.02   | Mbps      |            |        |       |  |  |  |  |
| Transmit Modulation Mode                  | 256QAM   | 0.81 (Dua | al) (30 MH | łz)    |       |  |  |  |  |
| Receive Modulation Mode                   | 256QAM 0.81 (Dual) (30 MHz)                          |           |            |        |       |  |  |  |  |
| Receive Modulation Mode Detail            | dulation Mode Detail Running At Maximum Receive Mode |           |            |        |       |  |  |  |  |
| Wireless Link Availability                | 100.0000 %   |           |            |        |       |  |  |  |  |
| Byte Error Ratio                          | 0  |           |            |        |       |  |  |  |  |
| Counter Measurement Period                | eriod 00:46:43                                       |           |            |        |       |  |  |  |  |
| Res                                       | et System  | Counters  |            |        |       |  |  |  |  |
|   |  |           |            |        |       |  |  |  |  |
| Attributes                                | Value  |           |            |        |       |  |  |  |  |
| Elapsed Time Indicator                    | 00:51:42   |           |            |        |       |  |  |  |  |
| Statistics Page Refresh Period            | 3600 seconds   |           |            |        |       |  |  |  |  |
| Submit Page Refresh Period                |  |           |            |        |       |  |  |  |  |
|   |  |           |            |        |       |  |  |  |  |

Figure 6-67 System Statistics page
#### System histograms

The System Statistics page contains the following fields under System Histograms:

**Transmit Power** 

**Receive Power** 

**Vector Error** 

#### Link Loss

#### **Signal Strength Ratio**

The Signal Strength Ratio is the ratio of the power received by the Vertical / Horizontal receivers and presented as: max, mean, min, and latest in an histogram format. The max, min and latest are true instantaneous measurements; the mean is the mean of a set of one second means. See Histogram data on page 6-18.

#### **Transmit Data Rate**

The data rate in the transmit direction, expressed in Mbps and presented as: max, mean, min, and latest in an histogram format. The max, min and latest are true instantaneous measurements; the mean is the mean of a set of one second means. Expected data rates can be found in Data rate calculations on page 4-99.

#### **Receive Data Rate**

The data rate in the receive direction, expressed in Mbps and presented as: max, mean, min, and latest in an histogram format. The max, min and latest are true instantaneous measurements; the mean is the mean of a set of one second means. Expected data rates can be found in Data rate calculations on page 4-99.

#### **Aggregate Data Rate**

The sum of the data rate in the directions expressed in Mbps and presented as: max, mean, min, and latest in an histogram format. The max, min and latest are true instantaneous measurements; the mean is the mean of a set of one second means. Expected data rates can be found in Data rate calculations on page 4-99.

#### **Histogram Measurement Period**

The time over which the system histograms were collected.

phn-0896\_009v003 Feb 2010

#### UNDER DEVELOPMENT

## 

To reset all histograms and restart the measurement period, select **Reset System Histograms and Measurement Period**.

#### Data port counters

The System Statistics page contains the following fields under **Data Port Counters**:

#### **Ethernet Tx Packets**

This displays the total number of good packets the bridge has sent for transmission by the local Ethernet interface.

#### **Ethernet Rx Packets**

This displays the total number of good packets the bridge has received from the local Ethernet interface.

#### Management port counters

The System Statistics page contains the following fields under **Management Port Counters**:

#### **Packets To Internal Stack**

This displays the total number of good packets the bridge has transmitted to the internal stack (for example, ARP requests, PING requests, HTTP requests).

#### **Packets From Internal Stack**

This displays the total number of good packets the bridge has received from the internal stack (for example ARP responses, PING replies, HTTP responses).

#### Wireless port counters and performance information

The System Statistics page contains the following fields under **Wireless Port Counters and Performance Information**:

#### Wireless Tx Packets

This displays the total number of good packets the bridge has sent for transmission by the wireless interface.

#### **Wireless Rx Packets**

This displays the total number of good packets the bridge has received from the wireless interface.

#### **Link Symmetry**

Link Symmetry: A ratio that expresses the division between transmit and receive time in the TDD frame. The first number in the ratio represents the time allowed for the transmit direction and the second number represents the time allowed for the receive direction.

#### **Link Capacity**

The maximum aggregate data capacity available for user traffic under the current radio link conditions, assuming the units have been connected using Gigabit Ethernet. The sum of the displayed Transmit and Receive data rates may be lower than this figure if the link isn't fully loaded by the current traffic profile.

#### **Transmit Modulation Mode**

The modulation mode currently being used on the transmit channel. The number in brackets after the modulation mode and coding rate string is the effective data rate available to all MAC layer protocols. List of all the modulation modes can be found in Data rate calculations on page 4-99, where data rate calculations plots are given for each available modulation mode.

#### **Receive Modulation Mode**

The modulation mode currently being used on the receive channel. The number in brackets after the modulation mode and coding rate string is the effective data rate available to all MAC layer protocols. List of all the modulation modes can be found in Data rate calculations on page 4-99, where data rate calculations plots are given for each available modulation mode.

#### **Receive Modulation Mode Detail**

This supplies the user with information regarding the receive modulation mode in use. Possible values are:

- o "Running at maximum receive mode"
- o "Running at user-configured Target Modulation Mode"
- o "Restricted because Installation is armed"
- o "Restricted because of byte errors on the wireless link"
- o "Restricted because a DFS channel change is in progress"
- o "Restricted due to the low Ethernet link speed"
- o "Limited by the radio conditions"

#### **Wireless Link Availability**

Expresses the link availability as a percentage of time since the first successful registration after a system restart, expressed as a percentage to four decimal places.

#### **Byte Error Ratio**

The ratio of detected Byte errors to the total number of bytes since the last system reboot. This is a true measure of link quality as this measurement is made continually using null frames when there is no user data to transport.

#### **Counter Measurement Period**

The time over which the system counters were collected.

## **NOTE**

To reset all system counters to zero, select **Reset System Counters**.

#### Other attributes

The System Statistics page contains the following other fields:

#### **Elapsed Time Indicator**

Elapsed time since the last system reboot.

#### **Statistics Page Refresh Period**

The statistics page refreshes automatically according to the setting entered here (in seconds).

## 

After updating the Statistics Page Refresh Period field, select **Submit Page Refresh Period**.

## **Detailed counters**

The Detailed Counters page (Figure 6-68) displays detailed statistics of the Ethernet Bridge and the underlying wireless performance.

| Figure 6-68 | Detailed | Counters page |
|-------------|----------|---------------|
|-------------|----------|---------------|

| Eulernet                          |             | Wilciess                      |                    |
|-----------------------------------|-------------|-------------------------------|--------------------|
| Attributes                        | Value Units | Attributes                    | Value Unit         |
| Ethernet Rx Octets                | 0 (+0)      | Wireless Rx Octets            | 55,012 (+55,012)   |
| Ethernet Tx Octets                | 0 (+0)      | Wireless Tx Octets            | 349,490 (+349,490) |
| Ethernet Rx Drops                 | 0 (+0)      | Wireless Rx Drops             | 0 (+0)             |
| Ethernet R× Packets               | 0 (+0)      | Wireless Rx Packets           | 598 (+153)         |
| Ethernet R× Broadcasts            | 0 (+0)      | Wireless Rx Broadcasts        | 106 (+106)         |
| Ethernet R× Multicasts            | 0 (+0)      | Wireless Rx Multicasts        | 0 (+0)             |
| Ethernet Rx Crc And Align         | 0 (+0)      | Wireless Rx Crc And Align     | 0 (+0)             |
| Ethernet Rx Undersize             | 0 (+0)      | Wireless Rx Undersize         | 0 (+0)             |
| Ethernet Rx Oversize              | 0 (+0)      | Wireless Rx Oversize          | 0 (+0)             |
| Ethernet Rx Fragments             | 0 (+0)      | Wireless Rx Fragments         | 0 (+0)             |
| Ethernet R× Jabbers               | 0 (+0)      | Wireless Rx Jabbers           | 0 (+0)             |
| Ethernet Rx 64 Bytes              | 0 (+0)      | Wireless Rx 64 Bytes          | 524 (+524)         |
| Ethernet Rx 65 To 127 Bytes       | 0 (+0)      | Wireless Rx 65 To 127 Bytes   | 46 (+46)           |
| Ethernet Rx 128 To 255 Bytes      | 0 (+0)      | Wireless Rx 128 To 255 Bytes  | 1 (+1)             |
| Ethernet Rx 256 To 511 Bytes      | 0 (+0)      | Wireless Rx 256 To 511 Bytes  | 28 (+28)           |
| Ethernet Rx 512 To 1023 Bytes     | 0 (+0)      | Wireless Rx 512 To 1023 Bytes | 16 (+16)           |
| Ethernet Rx 1024 To Max Bytes     | 0 (+0)      | Wireless Rx 1024 To Max Bytes | 0 (+0)             |
| Ethernet Tx Drops                 | 803 (+803)  | Wireless Tx Drops             | 1 (+1)             |
| Ethernet Tx Packets               | 0 (+0)      | Wireless Tx Packets           | 803 (+285)         |
| Ethernet Tx Broadcasts            | 0 (+0)      | Wireless Tx Broadcasts        | 0 (+0)             |
| Ethernet Tx Multicasts            | 0 (+0)      | Wireless T× Multicasts        | 0 (+0)             |
| Ethernet Tx Collisions            | 0 (+0)      | Wireless Tx Collisions        | 0 (+0)             |
| Ethernet Tx 64 Bytes              | 0 (+0)      | Wireless Tx 64 Bytes          | 254 (+254)         |
| Ethernet Tx 65 To 127 Bytes       | 0 (+0)      | Wireless Tx 65 To 127 Bytes   | 153 (+153)         |
| Ethernet Tx 128 To 255 Bytes      | 0 (+0)      | Wireless Tx 128 To 255 Bytes  | 92 (+92)           |
| Ethernet Tx 256 To 511 Bytes      | 0 (+0)      | Wireless Tx 256 To 511 Bytes  | 37 (+37)           |
| Ethernet Tx 512 To 1023 Bytes     | 0 (+0)      | Wireless Tx 512 To 1023 Bytes | 98 (+98)           |
| Ethernet Tx 1024 To Max Bytes     | 0 (+0)      | Wireless Tx 1024 To Max Bytes | 194 (+194)         |
| Ethernet Tx Fifo Drops            | 0 (+0)      | Wireless Tx Fifo Drops        | 0 (+0)             |
| Ethernet Rx Pause Frames          | 0 (+0)      | Wireless Rx Pause Frames      | 0 (+0)             |
| Ethernet Tx Pause Frames          | 0(+0)       | Wireless Tx Pause Frames      | 0 (+0)             |
| Ethernet Rx Classified Drops      | 0(+0)       | Wireless Rx Classified Drops  | 0 (+0)             |
| Ethernet Ry Frames Q0             | 0(+0)       | Mireless Ty Frames Q0         | 0 (+0)             |
| Ethernet Ry Frames Q1             | 822 (+822)  | Mireless Ty Frames Q1         | 822 (+822)         |
| Ethernet Ry Frames Q2             | 0(+0)       | Mireless Tx Frames Q2         | 0(+0)              |
| Ethernet Ry Frames 03             | 0(+0)       | Mireless Tx Frames Q3         | 0(+0)              |
| Ethernet Ry Frames 04             | 0(+0)       | Mireless Tx Frames Q4         | 0(+0)              |
| Pthernet Ry Frames 05             | 0(+0)       | Mireless Tx Frames Q4         | 0 (+0)             |
| Ethernet Ry Frames OS             | 0(+0)       | Wireless TX Frames Q5         | 0(+0)              |
| Ethernet By Frames 07             | 0(+0)       | Wileless TX Frames Q0         | 0(+0)              |
| Ethernet Tx Frames OD             | 0(+0)       | Wildess TX Hames Gr           | 0(+0)              |
| Ethernet Ty Frames Go             | 0.00        | Wireless Rx Frames Qu         | 000(+000)          |
| Ethernet Tx Frames Q1             | 0(+0)       | Wireless Rx Frames Q1         | 0(+0)              |
| Ellement Tx Frames Q2             | 0(+0)       | Wireless for Frames Q2        | 0(+0)              |
| Euriemet Tx Frames Q3             | 0(+0)       | wireless fix nrames Q3        | 0(+0)              |
| Ethernet Tx Frames Q4             | 0(+0)       | vvireless rox nrames Q4       | 0(+0)              |
| cinemet Tx Frames Q5              | 0(+0)       | vvireless itx Frames Q5       | 0(+0)              |
| zinemet TX Frames Q6              | 0(+0)       | vvireless KX Frames Q6        | 0(+0)              |
| inernet Tx Frames Q7              | 0(+0)       | vvireless Rx Frames Q7        | 0 (+0)             |
| nternal Stack                     |             |                               |                    |
| Packets To Internal Stack         | 676 (+230)  |                               |                    |
| Packets From Internal Stack       | 898 (+366)  |                               |                    |
| Packets lanored By Internal Stack | 0 (+0)      |                               |                    |

The Detailed Counters page is subdivided into two columns. Column one presents the detailed statistics for the bridge's Ethernet interface. Column two relates to the wireless interface.

The Counters have the following definitions:

#### Tx & Rx Octets

Total number of octets (bytes) transmitted or received over the interface.

#### **Rx Drops**

Total number of frames dropped due to the lack of sufficient capacity in the receive buffer.

#### **Rx Packets**

Total number of packets received by the interface. This includes both good and bad packets.

#### **Rx Broadcasts**

Total number of good broadcast packets.

#### **Rx Multicasts**

Total number of good multicast packets.

#### **Rx CRC and Align**

Total number of packets with CRC or frame alignment errors.

#### **Rx Undersize**

Total number of packets received that are less than 64 bytes and have a valid CRC.

#### **Rx Oversize**

Total number of packets received that are greater than the maximum number of bytes with a valid CRC.

#### **Rx Fragments**

Total number of packets that are less than 64 bytes with an invalid CRC (these packet types are also known as runts).

#### **Rx Jabbers**

Total number of packets received that are greater than the maximum number of bytes with an invalid CRC.

#### **Rx 64 Bytes**

Total number 64 byte frames received

#### Rx 65 to 127 Bytes

Total number of frames received in the size range 65 to 127 bytes.

#### Rx 128 to 255 Bytes

Total number of frames received in the size range 128 to 255 bytes.

#### Rx 256 to 511 Bytes

Total number of frames received in the size range 256 to 511 bytes.

#### **Rx 512 to 1023 Bytes**

Total number of frames received in the size range 512 to 1023 bytes.

#### Rx 1024 to Max

Total number of frames received in the size range 1024 to Maximum bytes.

#### **Tx Drops**

Total number of frames dropped due excessive collisions, late collision and frame ageing.

#### **Tx Packets**

Total number of packets received by the interface. This includes both good and bad packets.

#### **Tx Broadcasts**

Total number of good broadcast packets.

#### **Tx Multicasts**

Total number of good multicast packets.

#### **Tx Collisions**

Total number frames experiencing collisions.

#### Tx 64 Bytes

Total number 64 byte frames transmitted

#### Tx 65 to 127 Bytes

Total number frames transmitted in the size range 65 to 127 bytes.

#### **Tx 128 to 255 Bytes**

Total number frames transmitted in the size range 128 to 255 bytes.

#### UNDER DEVELOPMENT

#### Tx 256 to 511 Bytes

Total number frames transmitted in the size range 256 to 511 bytes.

#### **Tx 512 to 1023 Bytes**

Total number frames transmitted in the size range 512 to 1023 bytes.

#### Tx 1024 to Max

Total number frames transmitted in the size range 1024 to Maximum bytes.

#### **Tx FIFO Drops**

Total number frames dropped due to lack of capacity in the transmit buffer, for example when the PTP 600 Series is connected to the local Ethernet at a connection speed of less than 1 Gbps.

#### Rx & Tx Frames Q0...Q7

Total number of received or transmitted frames for each Traffic Class (Q0 to Q7).

#### **Rx & Tx Pause Frames**

Total number of received or transmitted pause frames (Ethernet interface only).

#### **Packets To Internal Stack**

The total number of good packets the bridge has transmitted to the internal stack.

#### **Packets From Internal Stack**

The total number of good packets the bridge has received from the internal stack

#### **Packets Ignored By Internal Stack**

The total number of bad packets the bridge has transmitted to the internal stack.

#### **Rx Classifier Drops**

Total number of received frames dropped due to the application of classifier rules.

#### **Detailed Counters Page Refresh Period**

The statistics page refreshes automatically according to the setting entered here (in seconds).

## **Diagnostics plotter**

To further enhance the diagnostic capabilities of the PTP 600 Series, the storage of link performance histograms has been extended to 31. To optimize RAM (volatile memory) usage a cascading histogram approach has been adopted. The root histogram is identical to the histograms in earlier releases of the software, that is data is stored for one hour at a resolution of one second. Previously, the histograms were simple cyclic buffers which never stored more that the last one hour of data. The new cascading histogram approach daisy chains multiple histograms together. When the first histogram fills up the overflow from the first is used as an input to the next histogram in line. To optimize memory utilization, a statistical analysis is performed on the overflow to reduce the amount of data to be stored. In the case of the PTP 600 Series the cascading histograms are defined as:

- Histogram 1: 1 hour at a resolution of 1 second
- Histogram 2: 24 hours at a resolution of 1 minute
- Histogram 3: 30 Days at a resolution of 1 hour

For example, when histogram 1 fills up and starts to overflow the first minute of overflow is analyzed and the maximum, minimum and mean over that minute are computed and inserted into histogram 2. When histogram 2 fills up and starts to overflow the first hour of overflow is analyzed and the maximum, minimum and mean over that hour is computed and inserted into histogram 3. When histogram 3 starts to overflow, the overflow data is simply discarded.

#### **Diagnostic plotter page**

New for the PTP 600 Series is the system administration diagnostic plotter facility see Figure 6-69.

Figure 6-69 Diagnostic Plotter page



The diagnostic plotter allows the system administrator to view the cascading histogram data in an easily accessible graphical form. The plot always displays three traces, maximum, minimum and mean by default. The diagnostic selector allows the user to select the various categories of histogram.

The histograms that are available are:

- Vector Error
- Rx Power
- Tx Power
- Signal Strength Ratio
- Link Loss
- Rx Data Rate
- Tx Data Rate
- Aggregate Data Rate

The diagnostic plotter uses a novel time representation in the x-axis which compresses the timeline of the plot without sacrificing resolution.

The trace selection allows the user to control which traces are plotted.

As with other management pages the page refresh period can be used to interactively monitor the wireless link.

#### **CSV** download

The diagnostics Download page allows the system administrator to download snapshots of system diagnostics.

Figure 6-70 Generate Downloadable Diagnostics page

| Attributes           | Value        |
|----------------------|--------------|
| Diagnostics Selector | Vector Error |
| Generate Diagnostics |              |

The following diagnostics are available:

- Vector Error
- Rx Power
- Tx Power
- Signal Strength Ratio V/H
- Link Loss
- Rx Data Rate
- Tx Data Rate
- Aggregate Data Rate
- Receive SNR
- Rx Gain

All diagnostics are extracted from the associated status and statistics web page histograms. They are translated in a CSV file containing at most 5784 entries. These 5784 entries comprise 3600 entries for the first hour, 1440 entries for the next 24 hours and 744 entries for the next 31 days.

# **Properties**

The web page properties screen allows the user to configure the web page interface (Figure 6-71).

| Webpage Properties                |                                 |         |
|-----------------------------------|---------------------------------|---------|
| Properties                        |                                 |         |
| Attributes                        | Value                           | Units   |
| Web Properties                    | Disable FrontPage login         |         |
| Web Properties                    | Disable HTTP NO-CACHE META data |         |
| Auto Logout Timer                 | 60                              | Minutes |
| Distance Units                    | ● Metric O Imperial             |         |
| Use Long Integer Comma Formatting | O Disabled 💿 Enabled            |         |
| Popup Help                        | O Disabled 💿 Enabled            |         |
| Apply Pro                         | perties Reset Form              |         |

Figure 6-71 Webpage Properties page

The Properties page contains the following fields:

#### WEB Properties: Disable Front Page Login

Allows access to homepage and status page web pages without forcing a login as the system administrator.

#### WEB Properties: Disable HTTP NO-CACHE META data

Removes the HTTP NO-CACHE META clause from all dynamically created web pages.

#### **Auto Logout Timer**

Configures the time, in minutes, when the system administrator is automatically logged out if no web page activity is detected.

#### **Distance Units**

Swaps the default metric display of distance in to imperial units, for example km to Miles.

#### **Use Long Integer Comma Formatting**

Changes the format of long integers from 1000000 to 1,000,000.

## Reboot

The reboot page allows the system administrator to perform commanded reboots of the wireless unit. The reboot page also allows the system administrator to view a list of past reboot reasons. The "Previous Reasons For Reset/Reboot" field has been implemented as a drop down selection box, where the latest reason for reboot is located at the top of the list.

If the SNTP service from the remote management section above is active, or the system time has been set, then the command reboot reason will be accompanied by the date and time at which the reboot occurred.

Figure 6-72 Reboot Wireless Unit page

| Reboot Wireless Unit                      |  |  |
|---|--|--|
| Use this page to reboot the wireless unit |  |  |
| Attributes                                | Value  |  |
| Previous Reasons For Reset/Reboot         | User Reboot - Console (08-Nov-2006 10:33:21) |  |
| Reboot Wireless Unit                      |  |  |
|   |  |  |

#### Figure 6-73 Reboot confirmation pop up



# **Chapter 7 Troubleshooting**

This section provides instructions for identifying and correcting faults in a PTP 600 link.

Perform the following procedures either on a newly installed link, or on an operational link if communication is lost:

| 1 | Test the hardware at one end of the link, as described in Test link end hardware on page 7-2.       |
|---|---|
| 2 | Test the hardware at the other end of the link, as described in Test link end hardware on page 7-2. |
| 3 | Test the radio link, as described in Test radio link on page 7-17.                                  |
| 4 | If an installation has been struck by lightning, see Lightning strike on page 7-19.                 |
| 5 | If an ODU has entered recovery mode, see Using recovery mode on page 7-20.                          |

Procedure 7-1 Troubleshooting (fault finding)

.....

# Test link end hardware

Before testing link end hardware, confirm that all outdoor drop cables, that is those that connect the ODU or GPS receiver (if installed) to equipment inside the building, are of the supported Superior Essex cable type, as defined in Outdoor connections on page 1-15.

When the link end hardware (PIDU Plus, LPU, ODU and cabling) has been installed, test it by following this procedure:

| 1 | Apply mains or battery power to the PIDU Plus. The green Power LED should illuminate continuously.   |
|---|--|
| 2 | After 45 seconds, the orange Ethernet LED should be observed starting with 10 slow flashes.  |
| 3 | Connect the CAT5e cable from the LAN port of the PIDU Plus to the network.<br>The Ethernet LED should blink randomly as traffic passes through.                        |
| 4 | If the Power and Ethernet LEDs do not illuminate correctly, test the link end as described in the flowchart (Figure 7-1) and detailed test procedures that follow.     |
| 5 | If a UltraSync GPS synchronization unit has been installed, but one or more of its status LEDs are not illuminated, refer to Test UltraSync GPS receiver on page 7-16. |

Procedure 7-2 Testing link end hardware



**Figure 7-1** Link end hardware test flowchart #1



#### **Figure 7-2** Link end hardware test flowchart #2

## **Power LED is off**

If the Power LED is not on solid or flashing, proceed as follows:

Procedure 7-3 Test the power supply

| 1 | Remove the power lead from the PIDU Plus.                      |
|---|--|
| 2 | Test that the power supply (mains or 56 V battery) is working. |
| 3 | If the power supply is not working, investigate the cause.     |

If the power supply is working, proceed as follows:

Procedure 7-4 Remove ODU cable from PIDU Plus

| 1 | Open the flap on the left hand side of the PIDU Plus.    |
|---|--|
| 2 | Remove the ODU cable from the PIDU Plus.                 |
| 3 | Observe the effect on the Power LED; does it illuminate? |

If the Power LED does not illuminate when the ODU cable is removed, proceed as follows:

Procedure 7-5 Power LED does not illuminate when ODU cable is removed

| 1 | Measure the voltage across the $+55$ V and 0 V pads inside the PIDU Plus flap.   |
|---|--|
|   | If the voltage is incorrect, it indicates that the PIDU Plus is short-circuited.<br>Report a suspected PIDU Plus fault to Motorola.                          |
| 2 | Measure the impedance across the Power connector.  |
|   | If the impedance is incorrect, it indicates that the PIDU Plus is short-circuited.<br>Report a suspected PIDU Plus fault to Motorola.                        |
| 3 | If both of the above tests produce correct readings, it is likely that the PIDU<br>Plus Power LED is faulty. Report a suspected PIDU Plus fault to Motorola. |

If the Power LED does illuminate when the ODU cable is removed, proceed as follows:

Procedure 7-6 Power LED does illuminate when ODU cable is removed

| 1 | Remove the jumper (J905) found inside the PIDU Plus flap.  |
|---|--|
| 2 | Measure the current with an ammeter placed across the two jumper pins. It should be 10 mA with the ODU disconnected. |
|   | If the ammeter reading is incorrect, report a suspected PIDU Plus fault to Motorola.                                 |

If all tests so far have succeeded, proceed as follows:

#### Procedure 7-7 Other power tests

| 1 | Reconnect the ODU cable to the PIDU Plus.  |
|---|--|
| 2 | Measure the current with an ammeter placed across the two jumper pins. It should be in the range 300 mA to 1 A with the ODU connected.                     |
| 3 | If the ammeter reading is too high, the ODU may be drawing too much power,<br>or the ODU may be short-circuited. Report a suspected ODU fault to Motorola. |
| 4 | If the ammeter reading is too low, the PIDU Plus may be supplying too little power. Report a suspected PIDU Plus fault to Motorola.                        |

## **Power LED is flashing**

If the green Power LED is flashing, proceed as follows:

#### Procedure 7-8 Power LED is flashing

| 1 | Remove and examine the cable that connects the PIDU Plus to the LPU or ODU.                       |  |
|---|---|--|
| 2 | Check that pins 4&5 and 7&8 are not crossed with pins 1&2 and 3&6.                                |  |
| 3 | Check that the resistance between pins 1&8 is greater than 100K ohms.                             |  |
| 4 | If either check fails, replace or repair the cable that connects the PIDU Plus to the LPU or ODU. |  |

## Ethernet LED did not flash 10 times

When the PIDU Plus is connected to the power supply and the green Power LED illuminates, there should be a 45 second delay, following which the yellow Ethernet LED should flash 10 times.

If the Ethernet LED did not flash 10 times, proceed as follows:

| 1 | Remove and examine the cable that connects the PIDU Plus to the LPU or ODU.   |
|---|---|
| 2 | Check that the wiring to pins 4&5 and 7&8 is correct. For example, the wiring to pins 4 and 7 may be crossed.   |
| 3 | If an LPU is installed, it can be used to check that power is available on the cable to the ODU. The connections can be accessed by rotating the LPU lid as shown in Figure 7-3. The Lid nut only needs to be slacken, do not remove. Test that point P1 on the LPU PCB corresponds to pin 1 on the RJ45. Repeat for points P2 to P8. An indication of power on the Ethernet cable is also provided inside the LPU: the LED PWR1 should illuminate but LED PWR2 should not. |
| 4 | If either test fails, replace or repair the cable that connects the PIDU Plus to the LPU or ODU.  |





## No Ethernet activity

If the Ethernet LED did flash 10 times but then went off, proceed as follows:

**Procedure 7-10** Ethernet LED flashed 10 times then went out

| 1 | Check that the RJ45 connection from the LAN port of the PIDU Plus to the PC is working.                       |
|---|---|
| 2 | If the PC connection is working, remove and examine the cable that connects the PIDU Plus to the LPU or ODU.  |
| 3 | Check that the wiring to pins 1&2 and 4&6 is correct. For example, the wiring to pins 1 and 4 may be crossed. |
| 4 | If this test fails, replace or repair the cable that connects the PIDU Plus to the LPU or ODU.                |

## Irregular Ethernet activity

The yellow Ethernet LED should blink randomly as normal traffic passes through. If the Ethernet LED flashes irregularly, for example there is a short flash followed by a long flash, this indicates that the ODU has booted in recovery mode. The causes may be installation wiring or a corrupt ODU software load. For more information, see Using recovery mode on page 7-20.

## **Connection is not 1000 BaseT**

If the Ethernet connection to the network is only 10/100 BaseT, when 1000 BaseT is expected, proceed as follows:

Procedure 7-11 Connection is not 1000 BaseT

| 1 | Remove and examine the cable that connects the PIDU Plus to the LPU or ODU.                                   |  |
|---|---|--|
| 2 | Check that the wiring to pins 4&5 and 7&8 is correct. For example, the wiring to pins 4 and 7 may be crossed. |  |
| 3 | If this test fails, replace or repair the cable that connects the PIDU Plus to the LPU or ODU.                |  |

## Test Ethernet packet errors reported by ODU

To test for Ethernet packet errors, proceed as follows:

Procedure 7-12 Test for Ethernet packet errors

| 1 | Log in to the ODU and select Administration, Statistics, Detailed Counters.  |  |  |
|---|--|--|--|
| 2 | Select <b>Reset System Counters</b> at the bottom of the page and wait until the Ethernet Rx Packets counter has reached 10 million.   |  |  |
|   | The count will only update when the page is refreshed.   |  |  |
| 3 | If the counter does not increment or increments too slowly, because for example<br>the PTP 600 is newly installed and there is no offered Ethernet traffic, then<br>abandon this procedure and consider using the procedure Test ping packet<br>loss on page 7-11. |  |  |
| 4 | Check the Ethernet Rx Crc And Align counter. The test has passed if this is less than 10.  |  |  |

# Test Ethernet packet errors reported by managed switch or router

If the PTP 600 is connected directly to a managed LAN device, for example an Ethernet switch or router, it should be possible to carry out a check on the rate of errored Ethernet packets monitored by the managed device. Please refer to the user guide of the managed LAN device.

The test has passed if the rate of packet errors reported by the LAN device is less than 1 in 1 million packets.

## Test ping packet loss

It is possible to generate and monitor for lost packets by using a computer. This can be achieved using the Command Prompt application which is supplied as standard with Windows and MAC operating systems.

To test ping packet loss, proceed as follows:

| Procedure 7-13 | Test ping | packet loss |
|----------------|-----------|-------------|
|----------------|-----------|-------------|

| 1 | Ensure that the IP address of the computer is configured appropriately for connection to the PTP 600 under test.  |  |
|---|---|--|
| 2 | Ensure that the IP address of the computer does not clash with other devices connected to the network.  |  |
| 3 | If the PIDU Plus is connected to an Ethernet Switch or Router then connect the computer to a spare port, if available.  |  |
| 4 | If it is not possible to connect the computer to a spare port of the networking equipment, then the PIDU Plus will need to be disconnected from the network in order to execute this test.              |  |
|   | The following steps will disrupt network traffic carried by the PTP 600<br>under test.<br>Disconnect the PIDU Plus from the network.<br>Connect the computer directly to the LAN port of the PIDU Plus. |  |
| 5 | On the computer, open the Command Prompt application.   |  |

| 6 | Send 1000 ping packets of length 1500 bytes. The process will take 1000 seconds, which is approximately 17 minutes. |  |  |  |
|---|---|--|--|--|
|   | If the computer is running a Windows operating system, this is achieved by typing:                                  |  |  |  |
|   | ping -n 900 -1 1500 <ipaddress></ipaddress>   |  |  |  |
|   | where <ipaddress> is the IP address of the PTP 600 ODU under test.</ipaddress>                                      |  |  |  |
|   | If the computer is running a MAC operating system, this is achieved by typing:                                      |  |  |  |
|   | ping -c 900 -s 1492 <ipaddress></ipaddress>   |  |  |  |
|   | where <ipaddress> is the IP address of the PTP 600 ODU under test.</ipaddress>                                      |  |  |  |
| 7 | Record how many Ping packets have been lost. This is reported by Command  |  |  |  |
|   | Prompt on completion of the test.   |  |  |  |
|   | The test has passed if the number of lost packets is less than 2.   |  |  |  |

## Test resistance at the PIDU end of the drop cable

If the above procedures fail to diagnose the issue, there may be a fault in the wiring of the drop cable that connects the ODU (or LPU) to the PIDU Plus. Perform this task to test the resistances between the RJ45 pins.

Use the PTP drop cable tester (Figure 7-4) to make tesing easier. This can be ordered from <u>http://www.motorola.com/ptp/support</u> by selecting **Order Cable Tester** and completing the order form.



Figure 7-4 Drop cable tester (front and back views)

To test RJ45 resistance, proceed as follows:

#### Procedure 7-14 Test RJ45 resistance

| 1 | Unplug the cable that connects the PIDU Plus to the LPU or ODU from the PIDU Plus.  |  |
|---|---|--|
| 2 | Measure the cable resistances at the RJ45 between the pairs of pins specified<br>in Table 7-1. The measured resistances should be less than those quoted for<br>the applicable drop cable length. |  |
| 3 | Measure the resistance between pin 1 and the screen (ODU ground). It should<br>be greater than 100K ohms for all cable lengths.   |  |
| 4 | Measure the resistance between pin 8 and the screen (ODU ground). It should<br>be greater than 100K ohms for all cable lengths.   |  |
| 5 | Measure the resistance between pin 1 and pin 8.   |  |
|   | If UltraSync GPS is not fitted, it should be greater than 100K ohms all cable lengths.  |  |
|   | If UltraSync GPS is fitted, it should be greater than 2K ohms all cable lengths.  |  |

| Drop cable<br>length<br>(meters) | Between pins 1&2,<br>3&6 , 4&5 and<br>7&8 (ohms) | Between<br>pins 1&3<br>(ohms) | Between pins 4&7 (ohms) |
|----------------------------------|--|-------------------------------|-------------------------|
| 0                                | 0.8  | 1.0                           | 1.6                     |
| 10                               | 2.5  | 2.7                           | 3.3                     |
| 20                               | 4.2  | 4.4                           | 5.0                     |
| 30                               | 5.9  | 6.1                           | 6.7                     |
| 40                               | 7.6  | 7.8                           | 8.4                     |
| 50                               | 9.3  | 9.5                           | 10.1                    |
| 60                               | 11.0   | 11.2                          | 11.8                    |
| 70                               | 12.7   | 12.9                          | 13.5                    |
| 80                               | 14.4   | 14.6                          | 15.2                    |
| 90                               | 16.1   | 16.3                          | 16.9                    |
| 100                              | 17.8   | 18.0                          | 18.6                    |
| 200                              | 34.8   | 35.0                          | 35.6                    |
| 300                              | 51.8   | 52.0                          | 52.6                    |

 Table 7-1
 Expected RJ45 cable resistances at the PIDU Plus

## Test UltraSync GPS receiver

The UltraSync GPS synchronization unit, if installed, is located between the ODU and the LPU (Figure 2-17 and Figure 2-18). Use the status LEDs (Figure 7-5) to test the GPS unit.





To troubleshoot the GPS synchronization unit, perform the following test procedure:

**Power supply**: Check that the **+3.3V** and **RF\_ON** LEDs are lit, indicating that the GPS is receiving power. If they are not lit, confirm that all link end hardware (PIDU Plus, LPU, ODU and cabling) tests have been performed.

**Synchronization**: Approximately 2 minutes after powering on, the **GPS\_FIX** LED should be lit. If it is not, ensure the GPS is at a height of at least 1.8m above the ground, where there is an unobstructed path to the sky.

**Timing**: When the GPS\_FIX LED lights up, the **PPS\_OUT** LED should begin blinking faintly at one pulse per second, indicating that sync is being generated. If does not, replace or repair the GPS synchronization unit.

## Test radio link

If the radio link is not working, or it is unreliable, or the data throughput rate is too low, perform the tests specified in this section. It may be necessary to test the ODUs at both ends of the link.

\_\_\_\_\_

## No activity

If there is no wireless activity, perform Procedure 7-15.

Procedure 7-15 Testing an inactive radio link

| 1  | Check for Alarm conditions on Home page.  |  |  |
|----|---|--|--|
| 2  | Check that the software at each end of the link is the same version.  |  |  |
| 3  | Check that the Target Mac address is correctly configured at each end of the link.  |  |  |
| 4  | Check Range.  |  |  |
| 5  | Check Tx Power.   |  |  |
| 6  | Check License keys to ensure that both units are the same product variant.  |  |  |
| 7  | Check Master/Slave status for each unit and ensure that one unit is Master<br>and the other unit is slave.                      |  |  |
| 8  | Check that the link is not obstructed or the ODU misaligned.  |  |  |
| 9  | Check the DFS page at each end of the link and establish that there is a quiet wireless channel to use.                         |  |  |
| 10 | If there are no faults found in the configuration and there is absolutely no wireless signal, retry the installation procedure. |  |  |
| 11 | If this does not work then report a suspected ODU fault to Motorola.  |  |  |

## Some activity

If there is some activity but the link is unreliable or does not achieve the data rates required, perform Procedure 7-16.

| 1 | Check that the interference has not increased using the i-DFS measurements.  |
|---|--|
| 2 | If a quieter channel is available check that it is not barred.               |
| 3 | Check that the path loss is low enough for the communication rates required. |
| 4 | Check that the ODU has not become misaligned.                                |

| Procedure 7-16 | Testing a slo | w or unreliable | radio link |
|----------------|---------------|-----------------|------------|
|                |               |                 |            |

# Lightning strike

If a link end installation is struck by lightning, perform Procedure 7-17.

Procedure 7-17 Testing a link end after lightning strike

| 1 | Perform the tests specified in Test link end hardware on page 7-2.  |
|---|---|
| 2 | Ensure that the PIDU Plus is working and that the resistances are correct as specified in Test resistance at the PIDU on page 7-12.   |
| 3 | If the ODU is not working, power off the ODU and both LPUs and return them to Motorola.   |
| 4 | If the ODU is working but there is suspicion of damage to the LPU, then take<br>the LPUs down and take the covers off, inspect for damage, test the big diode<br>for short circuit and test all other diodes for forward voltage. |

.....

## Using recovery mode

This section provides instructions to allow users to recover a PTP 600 link.

The Motorola PTP 600 point-to-point wireless Ethernet bridges have a special mode of operation that allows the user to recover a unit from configuration errors or software image corruption.

The following topics are described in this section:

- Entering recovery mode on page 7-20
- Upgrade software image on page 7-22
- Reset IP & Ethernet configuration on page 7-23
- Erase configuration on page 7-25
- Reboot on page 7-27

#### Entering recovery mode

Recovery mode is entered by depressing the Recovery Switch located on the underside of the PIDU Plus while applying mains power, as shown in PIDU Plus PTP 300/500/600 Series on page 1-9. The Recovery Switch should be held in the depressed state for between 10 and 20 seconds after the application of mains power. The Ethernet LED will flash with 10 double flashes at power up (following the release of the Recovery switch).

When in recovery mode the user will be able to access the unit via the Ethernet interface. The Ethernet interface will have its IP address set to 169.254.1.1 (or 10.10.10.10). On connection to a unit in recovery mode the following screen is displayed (Figure 7-6):

Figure 7-6 Recovery Image Warning page



Clicking on the warning page image will take the user on to the Recovery Option Page (Figure 7-7).





The recovery options available are:

#### **Upgrade Software Image**

This allows the user to reload a software image. This may be the original image if software corruption is suspected or a step back to an old image if an incorrect image has just been loaded.

#### **Reset IP & Ethernet Configuration back to factory defaults**

This allows the user to reset the unit back to the factory defaults:

- o IP Address 169.254.1.1 (or 10.10.10.10)
- o Netmask 255.255.0.0
- o Gateway 169.254.1.0
- o Ethernet Interface Auto-negotiate, Auto-MDI/MDIX

#### **Erase Configuration**

This allows the user to erase the unit's entire configuration. Executing this option will also erase factory settings such as target MAC address, range setting, license key, etc.

#### Reboot

This allows the user to reboot the unit. This option must be executed after resetting the IP & Ethernet configuration or erasing the configuration detailed above.

#### **Software Version**

This is the software version of the recovery operating system permanently installed during manufacture.

#### **Recovery Reason**

Indicates the reason the unit is operating in Recovery mode. Possible reasons are "Recovery button active" or "Invalid or corrupt image"

#### MAC Address

The MAC address shown here is the MAC address of the unit programmed during manufacture.

## Upgrade software image

The first step (Figure 7-7) is to use the 'Browse' button to locate the software image to be downloaded. Once located the user should press the "Upgrade Software Image" button to start the software download process.

During software download, progress is indicated by a pair of progress bars (Figure 7-8).

Figure 7-8 Upgrade Progress Tracker page

| Upgrade Progress Tracker         |      |  |  |  |
|----------------------------------|------|--|--|--|
| Writing software image to FLASH: |      |  |  |  |
|                                  | :27% |  |  |  |
| Overall Upgrade Progress         |      |  |  |  |
|                                  | :77% |  |  |  |

When the download is complete a page is displayed indicating the status of the software download (Figure 7-9).

#### Figure 7-9 Software Upgrade Complete page



After carefully checking that correct image has been downloaded the user should reboot the unit by pressing the "Reboot Wireless Unit" button. The user will then be presented with a pop up box asking them to confirm the action (Figure 7-10).

Figure 7-10 Reboot confirmation pop up



The unit will now reboot. Providing the unit configuration is still intact the unit should restart in normal operational mode and the link should recover. If the unit or link fails to recover, refer to Test link end hardware on page 7-2.

### **Reset IP & Ethernet configuration**

To reset IP & Ethernet configuration back to factory defaults the user should press the "Reset IP & Ethernet Configuration back to factory defaults" button on the "Recovery Options" page (Figure 7-7). The user will now be presented with a pop up box asking them to confirm the action (Figure 7-11).
#### Figure 7-11 Confirm reset to factory default pop up



On confirmation the following page will be displayed (Figure 7-12). The user should now reboot the unit by pressing the "Reboot" button.

Figure 7-12 Ethernet & IP configuration erased successfully page

| Ethernet & IP configuration erased successfully            |  |  |  |  |
|--|--|--|--|--|
| Motorola PTP 58600 Full Recovery Options                   |  |  |  |  |
| Browse   |  |  |  |  |
| Upgrade Software Image                                     |  |  |  |  |
|  |  |  |  |  |
| Reset IP & Ethernet Configuration back to factory defaults |  |  |  |  |
| Erase Configuration  |  |  |  |  |
| Reboot   |  |  |  |  |
| Software Version:: Recovery-04-02                          |  |  |  |  |
| Recovery Reason:: Recovery Button Active                   |  |  |  |  |
| MAC Address:: 00:04:56:80:2e:12                            |  |  |  |  |

The user will now be presented with a pop up box asking them to confirm the action (Figure 7-13).

#### Figure 7-13 Reboot confirmation pop up



The unit will now reboot. The unit should now start up in normal mode but with the IP address set to 169.254.1.1 and the Ethernet interface set to auto-negotiate and auto-MDI/MDIX. If the unit fails to recover, refer to Test link end hardware on page 7-2.

#### **Erase configuration**

To erase the unit's configuration the user should press the "Erase Configuration" button on the "Recovery Options" page (Figure 7-7). The user will now be presented with a pop up box asking them to confirm the action (Figure 7-14).

Figure 7-14 Confirm erase configuration pop up



On confirmation the following page will be displayed (Figure 7-15). The user should now reboot the unit by pressing the "Reboot" button.



| Lower Non-volatile configuration bank erased successfully  |           |  |  |  |  |
|--|-----------|--|--|--|--|
| Upper Non-volatile configuration bank erased success       | fully     |  |  |  |  |
| Semi perm Non-volatile configuration bank erased suc       | cessfully |  |  |  |  |
| Motorola PTP 58600 Full Recovery Options                   |           |  |  |  |  |
| Browse   |           |  |  |  |  |
| Upgrade Software Image                                     |           |  |  |  |  |
|  |           |  |  |  |  |
| Reset IP & Ethernet Configuration back to factory defaults |           |  |  |  |  |
| Erase Configuration  |           |  |  |  |  |
| Reboot   |           |  |  |  |  |
| Software Version:: Recovery-04-02                          |           |  |  |  |  |
| Recovery Reason:: Recovery Button Active                   |           |  |  |  |  |
| MAC Address:: 00:04:56:80:2e:12                            |           |  |  |  |  |

The user will now be presented with a pop up box asking them to confirm the action (Figure 7-16)





The unit will now reboot. The unit should now start up in normal mode but with all configuration erased. If the unit fails to start up, refer to Test link end hardware on page 7-2.

### Reboot

This option can be used to reboot the unit. The user will now be presented with a pop up box asking them to confirm the action (Figure 7-17).

| Motorola PTP 58600 Full Recovery Options  |  |  |  |  |
|---|--|--|--|--|
| Browse  |  |  |  |  |
| Upgrade Software Image  |  |  |  |  |
|   |  |  |  |  |
| Reset IP & Ethernet Configuration back to factory defaults  |  |  |  |  |
| Erase Configuration   |  |  |  |  |
| Reboot  |  |  |  |  |
| Software Version:: Recovery-04-00   |  |  |  |  |
| Recovery Reason:: Unknown   |  |  |  |  |
| MAC Address:: 00:04:56:80:0f:ff   |  |  |  |  |
| The page at http://169.254.1.1 says:       X         Image: Are you sure you want to REBOOT this unit?       Image: Cancel         Image: OK       Cancel |  |  |  |  |

#### Figure 7-17 Recovery - reboot confirmation pop up

The unit will now reboot. The unit should now start up in normal operational mode. If the unit fails to start up, refer to Test link end hardware on page 7-2.

## Chapter 8 Connectorized PTP 600 series

This section details the changes and additional features relevant to the connectorized version of the PTP 600 Series products.

The following topics are described in this section:

- Product description on page 8-2.
- Software and features on page 8-3.
- Deployment considerations on page 8-9.
- Regulatory issues with connectorized units on page 8-10.
- Antenna choices on page 8-13.
- Installing connectorized bridges on page 8-14.
- Additional lightning protection on page 8-20.

.....

## **Product description**

#### Hardware

The Connectorized PTP 600 Series is a variant designed to provide the system integrator and installer with the ability to provide extra capability to cope with very difficult radio links compared to the PTP 600 Series Integrated model. The variant allows the use of a variety of externally mounted antennas, either Flat Plate or Dish, which have higher gains than provided by the integrated antenna that is normally used.

Figure 8-1 Connectorized PTP 600 Series outdoor unit



### Antenna

The antenna choices for the Connectorized PTP 58600 and 54600 are described in Antenna choices on page 8-13.

#### UNDER DEVELOPMENT

### Software and features

This section only describes the areas where functionality is modified for the connectorized variant. For details of the functionality that is common to the integrated and connectorized variants, see Chapter 6 Operation.

#### Status page

The link loss calculation presented on the Status Page of the management interface has to be modified to allow for the increased antenna gains at each end of the link. The manufacturing process of the Connectorized 600 Series configures the standard hardware of the unit for use with external antennas. The installer is prompted, as part of the installation process, to enter the gain of the external antenna(s) and cable losses at each end of the link. Peer-to-peer messaging is used to pass the effective antenna gain to each end of the link so that the link loss calculations can be correctly computed.

| System Status - Master                   |                      |         |                                |             |           |            |        |       |
|--|----------------------|---------|--------------------------------|-------------|-----------|------------|--------|-------|
| Equipment                                |                      |         | Wireless                       |             |           |            |        |       |
| Attributes                               | Value                | Units   | Attributes                     | Value       |           |            |        | Units |
| Link Name                                | Master               |         | Wireless Link Status           | Up          |           |            |        |       |
| Link Location                            |                      |         | Maximum Transmit Power         | 25          |           |            |        | dBm   |
| Software Version                         | 58600-B1385+ wdog    |         | Remote Maximum Transmit Power  | 10          |           |            |        | dBm   |
| Hardware Version                         | D05-R02-C            |         | Transmit Power                 | 25.0,       | 22.6,     | 18.0,      | 18.0   | dBm   |
| Region Code                              | Region Code 1        |         | Receive Power                  | -22.6,      | -58.7,    | -110.0,    | -49.4  | dBm   |
| Elapsed Time Indicator                   | 00:34:45             |         | Vector Error                   | 7.2,        | 2.5,      | -39.0,     | -31.3  | dB    |
| Ethernet / Internet                      |                      |         | Link Loss                      | 105.3,      | 6.8,      | 0.0,       | 105.3  | dB    |
| Ethernet Link Status                     | Copper Link Up       |         | Transmit Data Rate             | 63.50,      | 16.16,    | 0.00,      | 63.50  | Mbps  |
| Ethernet Speed And Duplex                | 100 Mbps Full Duplex |         | Receive Data Rate              | 63.50,      | 17.69,    | 0.00,      | 63.50  | Mbps  |
| MAC Address                              | 00:04:56:80:36:ba    |         | Link Capacity                  | 127.00      |           |            |        | Mbps  |
| Remote IP Address                        | <u>10.10.10.10</u>   |         | Transmit Modulation Mode       | 64QAM 0.    | 92 (Dual) | ) (15 MHz) |        |       |
| Telecoms                                 |                      |         | Receive Modulation Mode        | 64QAM 0.    | 92 (Dual) | ) (15 MHz) |        |       |
| Channel A                                | Disabled             |         | Link Symmetry                  | 1 to 1      |           |            |        |       |
| Channel B                                | Disabled             |         | Receive Modulation Mode Detail | Running A   | t Maximu  | im Receive | e Mode |       |
|  |                      |         | Range                          | 0.1         |           |            |        | km    |
| Automatic page refresh period in seconds | 3600                 | Seconds | Update Page Refi               | resh Period | Res       | et form    |        |       |

Figure 8-2 Connectorized PTP 600 Series Status page

### **Configuration pages**

The Configuration web page for the connectorized variant is shown in Figure 8-3. The parameters Antenna Gain, Cable Loss and EIRP are specific to the connectorized variant.

#### Figure 8-3 Connectorized PTP 600 Series System Configuration page

| System Configurati                   | on   |       |
|--------------------------------------|--|-------|
| This page controls the day to day co | nfiguration of the PTP wireless unit.      |       |
| Equipment                            |  |       |
| Attributes                           | Value                                      | Units |
| Link Name                            | Tower of London                            |       |
| Link Location                        | London, England                            |       |
| Master Slave Mode                    | Master                                     |       |
| Link Mode Optimization               | IP Traffic                                 |       |
| Max Receive Modulation Mode          | 256QAM 0.81 💌                              |       |
| Ethernet Capped Max Wireless Spee    | d C Disabled 📀 Enabled                     |       |
| Max Transmit Power                   | 25   | dBm   |
| Antenna Gain                         | 23.5                                       | dBi   |
| Cable Loss                           | 0.0  | dB    |
| EIRP                                 | 48.5                                       | dBm   |
| Subr                                 | it Updated System Configuration Reset Form |       |

### **Installation pages**

The installer is prompted to enter the Antenna Gain and Cable Loss (Connectorized PTP 600 Series to antenna) at each end of the link. The Installation Pages for the connectorized version are shown as Figure 8-4 to Figure 8-6.

| Step 2: Wireless Configuration                               |  |       |  |  |
|--|--|-------|--|--|
| Please enter the following wireless configuration parameters |  |       |  |  |
| Wireless data entry  |  |       |  |  |
| Attributes   | Value  | Units |  |  |
| Target MAC Address   | 00:04:56: 80 : 27 : cb   |       |  |  |
| Master Slave Mode  | ⊙ Master ○ Slave   |       |  |  |
| Link Mode Optimization                                       | O IP Traffic O TDM Traffic   |       |  |  |
| TDD Synchronization Mode                                     | ⊙ Disabled ○ Enabled   |       |  |  |
| Tx Max Power   | 25   | dBm   |  |  |
| Ranging Mode   | ⊙ Auto 0 to 40 km ○ Auto 0 to 100 km ○ Auto 0 to 200 km ○ Target Range |       |  |  |
| Target Range   | 0.0  | km    |  |  |
| Platform Variant   | Ointegrated Antenna O Connectorized                                    |       |  |  |
| Antenna Gain   | 23.0   | dBi   |  |  |
| Cable Loss   | 0.0  | dB    |  |  |
| Channel Bandwidth  | ○ 30 MHz   |       |  |  |
| Link Symmetry  | ○ Adaptive ○ 2 to 1 ⊙ 1 to 1 ○ 1 to 2                                  |       |  |  |
| Spectrum Management Control                                  | Oi_DFS OFixed Frequency  |       |  |  |
| Default Raster   | ⊙on Ooff   |       |  |  |
| Fixed Tx Frequency   | 5736   | MHz   |  |  |
| Tx Color Code  | в 💌  |       |  |  |
| Fixed Rx Frequency   | 5736   | MHz   |  |  |
| Rx Color Code  | A 💌  |       |  |  |
| Installation Tones   | O Disabled ○ Enabled   |       |  |  |
|  | Submit Wireless Configuration Reset Form                               |       |  |  |
| K Back   | llext  | >>    |  |  |

The following fields are relevant to connectorized ODUs:

#### Antenna Gain

Gain of the antenna you are connecting to the unit, see Antenna choices on page 8-13.

#### **Cable Loss**

Loss in the cable between the ODU and the antenna.

### 

If there is a significant difference in length of the antenna cables for the two antenna ports, then the average value should be entered.

#### Spectrum Management Control

Is used to configure the PTP 600 Series Spectrum Management features, see Spectrum management on page 6-22 for more details. i-DFS is the abbreviation for intelligent Dynamic Frequency Selection, which continually monitors the spectrum looking for the channel with the lowest level of on channel and co-channel interference. Fixed frequency mode allows the installer to fix the Transmit and receive frequencies on the units. The frequencies may be configured symmetrically or asymmetrically.

#### Figure 8-5 Connectorized PTP 600 Series Confirm Installation page

Step 3: Confirm Installation Configuration

| Please review your entered configuration. If any of the configuration items are<br>incorrect please use the back button to apply the corrections.   |                   |       |  |  |  |
|---|-------------------|-------|--|--|--|
| Once you're happy with the configuration press the 'Confirm Configuration, Arm<br>Installation Agent and Reboot' button, this will commit the parameters to non-volatile<br>memory and reboot this wireless unit. |                   |       |  |  |  |
| Installation configuration  |                   |       |  |  |  |
| Attributes  | Value             | Units |  |  |  |
| IP Address  | 10.10.10.11       |       |  |  |  |
| Subnet Mask   | 255.255.0.0       |       |  |  |  |
| Gateway IP Address  | 169.254.0.0       |       |  |  |  |
| Use VLAN For Management Interfaces  | No VLAN Tagging   |       |  |  |  |
| Telecoms Interface  | None              |       |  |  |  |
| Target MAC Address  | 00:04:56:80:27:cb |       |  |  |  |
| Master Slave Mode   | Master            |       |  |  |  |
| Link Mode Optimization  | IP Traffic        |       |  |  |  |
| TDD Synchronization Mode  | Disabled          |       |  |  |  |
| Tx Max Power  | 25                | dBm   |  |  |  |
| Ranging Mode  | Auto 0 to 40 km   |       |  |  |  |
| Platform Variant  | Connectorized     |       |  |  |  |
| Antenna Gain  | 23.0              | dBi   |  |  |  |
| Cable Loss  | 0.0               | dB    |  |  |  |
| EIRP  | 48.0              | dBm   |  |  |  |
| Channel Bandwidth   | 15 MHz            |       |  |  |  |
| Link Symmetry   | 1 to 1            |       |  |  |  |
| Spectrum Management Control   | Fixed Frequency   |       |  |  |  |
| Fixed Transmit Frequency  | 5736              | MHz   |  |  |  |
| Tx Color Code   | в                 |       |  |  |  |
| Fixed Receive Frequency   | 5736              | MHz   |  |  |  |
| Rx Color Code   | A                 |       |  |  |  |
| Installation Tones  | Disabled          |       |  |  |  |
| Confirm Configuration, Arm Installation Agent and Reboot  |                   |       |  |  |  |
| Kack  |                   |       |  |  |  |

#### EIRP

The Confirm Installation Page displays the EIRP (Effective Isotropic Radiated Power), which describes the strength of the radio signal leaving the wireless unit. This allows the operator to verify that their link configuration (Max Transmit Power, Antenna Gain and Cable Loss) do not cause the link to exceed any applicable regulatory limit.

#### Figure 8-6 Connectorized PTP 600 Series Disarm Installation page

### **Disarm Installation**

The installation agent is armed. If you wish to disarm installation then use the 'Disarm Installation Agent' button. If you wish to reconfigure the installation agent then use the wizards 'back' button

| Value             | Units  |
|-------------------|--|
| 10.10.10.11       |  |
| 255.255.0.0       |  |
| 169.254.0.0       |  |
| No VLAN Tagging   |  |
| None              |  |
| 00:04:56:80:27:cb |  |
| Master            |  |
| IP Traffic        |  |
| Disabled          |  |
| 25                | dBm  |
| Auto 0 to 200 km  |  |
| Connectorized     |  |
| 23.0              | dBi  |
| 0.0               | dB   |
| 48.0              | dBm  |
| 15 MHz            |  |
| 1 to 1            |  |
| i_DFS             |  |
| 5736              | MHz  |
| A                 |  |
| θ                 |  |
| Disabled          |  |
| ient ]            |  |
|                   |  |
|                   | Value         10.10.10.11         255.255.0.0         169.254.0.0         No VLAN Tagging         No VLAN Tagging         00:04:56:80:27:cb         Master         IP Traffic         Disabled         25         Auto 0 to 200 km         Connectorized         23.0         0.0         48.0         15 MHz         1 to 1         i_DFS         5736         A         B         Disabled         ent |

## **Deployment considerations**

### When to use external antennas

The majority of radio links can be successfully deployed with the PTP 600 Series. It should only be necessary to use external antennas where the LINKPlanner indicates marginal performance for a specific link – for example when the link is heavily obscured by dense woodland on an NLOS link or extremely long LOS links (>80km or >50 miles) over water.

The external antennas can be either dual-polarization (as the integrated antenna) or two single polarized antennas can be used in a spatially diverse configuration. It is expected that the dual-polarization antennas would normally be used to simplify the installation process; spatially diverse antennas may provide additional fade margin on very long LOS links where there is evidence of correlation of the fading characteristics on Vertical and Horizontal polarizations.

### Link budget

An estimate of the link budget for a specific application can be obtained by using the Motorola LINKPlanner tool. For more information see the Motorola web site.

## **Regulatory issues with connectorized units**

### Maximum EIRP

#### Normal EIRP limits

In most regions (including USA, Canada, Europe and Australia) operation of products in the band 5470 MHz to 5725 MHz is constrained by an EIRP limit. The constraint is that the EIRP must not exceed  $(17 + 10 \times \text{Log Bandwidth})$  dBm.

In some regions (including Europe) operation of products in the band 5725 MHz to 5850/5875 MHz is constrained by an EIRP limit. The constraint is that the EIRP must not exceed (23 + 10 x Log Bandwidth) dBm.

As the PTP 600 has an operating bandwidth from approximately 5 MHz to approximately 30 MHz, then the maximum allowed EIRP depends on the operating bandwidth of the radio as shown in Table 8-1.

| Operating bandwidth<br>(MHz) | Allowed EIRP (dBm) at<br>5.4 GHz | Allowed EIRP (dBm) at<br>5.8 GHz |
|------------------------------|----------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| 5                            | 24                               | 30                               |
| 10                           | 27                               | 33                               |
| 15                           | 28.8                             | 34.8                             |
| 30                           | 30                               | 36                               |

**Table 8-1** Normal EIRP limits with operating channel bandwidth

#### Calculating EIRP

When operating with external antennas, the installer or operator has to set the maximum transmit power to ensure that the EIRP limit is not exceeded. The EIRP may be calculated from:

Allowed EIRP(dBm) = Max\_Transmit\_Power (dBm) + Antenna Gain (dBi) – Feeder Losses (dB)

and hence:

Max\_Transmit\_Power (dBm) = Allowed EIRP(dBm) – Antenna Gain (dBi) + Feeder Losses (dB)

#### The Set\_Max\_Transmit\_Power parameter

As the actual maximum transmit power can only be adjusted in 1 dB steps, then the installer or operator must configure the PTP 600 to have a Set\_Max\_Transmit\_Power parameter as calculated below:

Set\_Max\_Transmit\_Power = [Max\_Transmit\_Power] rounded down to nearest lower dB step

In order to simplify matters, the settings to be used for regions with the EIRP limits in Table 8-1 (assuming short feeder cables) are shown in Table 8-2.

### 

Table 8-2 has been calculated on the basis of 0.5 dB cable loss and the highest gain antennas per size of which we are aware. At these operating frequencies, feeder losses even with short cables are unlikely ever to be below 0.5 dB for practical installations and cable diameters.

| Antenna<br>size | Maximum<br>available     | Operating<br>bandwidth (MHz) | Set_Max_Transmit_Power paramete<br>setting (dBm) |         |
|-----------------|--------------------------|------------------------------|--|---------|
|                 | antenna<br>gain<br>(dBi) |                              | 5.4 GHz  | 5.8 GHz |
| 2ft dish        | 29.4                     | 5                            | -6   | 0       |
|                 |                          | 10                           | -3   | 3       |
|                 |                          | 15                           | -2   | 4       |
|                 |                          | 30                           | 1  | 7       |
| 2.5ft dish      | 31.2                     | 5                            | Not allowed                                      | -2      |
|                 |                          | 10                           | -5   | 1       |
|                 |                          | 15                           | -3   | 3       |
|                 |                          | 30                           | 0  | 6       |
| 3ft dish        | 33.4                     | 5                            | Not allowed                                      | -4      |
|                 |                          | 10                           | -7   | -1      |
|                 |                          | 15                           | -5   | 0       |
|                 |                          | 30                           | -2   | 3       |

**Table 8-2** Setting maximum transmit power to meet general EIRP limits

| Antenna<br>size | Maximum<br>available | Operating<br>bandwidth (MHz) | Set_Max_Transmit_Power parameter<br>setting (dBm) |         |
|-----------------|----------------------|------------------------------|---|---------|
|                 | gain<br>(dBi)        |                              | 5.4 GHz   | 5.8 GHz |
| 4ft dish        | 34.8                 | 5                            | Not allowed                                       | -6      |
|                 |                      | 10                           | Not allowed                                       | -3      |
|                 |                      | 15                           | -7  | -1      |
|                 |                      | 30                           | -4  | 2       |

### Cable losses (FCC regions only)

The FCC approval for the product is based on tests with a cable loss between the units of not less than 1.2 dB at 5.8 GHz. The use of lower cable losses would result in the installation being outside the FCC rules. As an indication, 1.2 dB of cable loss corresponds to the following cable lengths excluding connector losses (source: Times Microwave).

| Table 8-3 | Cable losses per length |  |
|-----------|-------------------------|--|
|           |                         |  |

| 0-11-  | Length for 1.2dB Cable Loss at 5.8 GHz |     |  |
|--------|--|-----|--|
| Cable  | (ft)                                   | (m) |  |
| LMR100 | 1.9                                    | 0.6 |  |
| LMR200 | 4.6                                    | 1.4 |  |
| LMR300 | 7.25                                   | 2.2 |  |
| LMR400 | 11.1                                   | 3.4 |  |
| LMR600 | 16.5                                   | 5.0 |  |

### Antenna choices

#### 

### Antenna selection criteria

The main selection criterion is the required antenna gain. The secondary criterion is the ease of mounting and alignment. For example, the Radio Waves Parabolic dishes are supplied with a mount that allows adjustment for alignment independent of the actual antenna mounting. This type of antenna is much easier to align than those that have to be rotated around the mounting pole for alignment.

### **Non-FCC regions**

In non-FCC regions, antenna choice is not restricted, but any region specific EIRP limit must be obeyed by reducing the maximum Transmit power, see Licenses and region codes on page 2-3.

### **FCC regions**

In FCC regions, antenna choice is restricted as described in PTP 54600 FCC antenna restrictions on page 4-64 and PTP 58600 FCC antenna restrictions on page 4-85.

The maximum permitted antenna gain depends upon product variant and channel bandwidth, as specified in PTP 49600 radio system specifications on page 4-47 and Regulatory issues with connectorized units on page 8-10.

## Installing connectorized bridges

The section covers the generic installation instructions for the Connectorized versions of the PTP 600 Series point-to-point wireless Ethernet bridges. The actual installation procedure will depend on antenna choice, cable choice, required antenna separation etc.

PTP 54600 FCC antenna restrictions on page 4-64 and PTP 58600 FCC antenna restrictions on page 4-85 show a wide variety of antennas that can be used with the Connectorized PTP 600 Series.

### **Cables and connectors**

Cables should be selected using the above criteria. However it should be noted that a cable of a type similar to LMR400 is a lot more difficult to handle and route than a cable of a type similar to LMR100.

Motorola recommends the use of weatherproof connectors, preferably ones that come supplied with adhesive lined heat shrink sleeve that is fitted over the cable/connector interface.

The connectors required at the Connectorized PTP 600 Series end of the antenna cables are N-Type Male.

The connectors required at the antenna end of the antenna cables is dependant on the antenna type chosen.

#### **Tools**

The tools required for mounting a Connectorized PTP 600 Series unit are the same as those required for an Integrated 600 Series detailed in Preparing for site installation on page 5-7. The tools required for mounting the antennas are specific to the antenna chosen. The installer should refer to the antenna manufacturer's instructions.

### **Miscellaneous supplies**

The following miscellaneous supplies will be required:

- Cable ties, cable cleats for securing cables
- Self-amalgamating tape to weatherproof the RF connectors
- PVC tape for additional protection of the RF connectors and securing cables

### Mounting the connectorized PTP 600

A Connectorized PTP 600 Series is shipped with the same bracket as supplied with an Integrated unit. Details on the use of this bracket can be found in Mounting brackets on page 1-7. The PTP 600 Series should be mounted in a position that gives it maximum protection from the elements, but still allows easy access for making off the various connections and applying the recommended weatherproofing.

When using dual polar antennas the Connectorized PTP 600 Series should be mounted in such a position as to minimize the cable length, keeping losses to a minimum, taking into account the minimum cable lengths required by the FCC regulations, see PTP 58600 FCC antenna restrictions on page 4-85.

When using separate antennas the Connectorized PTP 600 Series should be mounted in such a position as to minimize both cable runs between the unit and the antennas. It is not necessary to mount the Connectorized PTP 600 Series at the mid point between the antennas.

### Mounting the antennas

The Antennas should be mounted according to the manufacturer's instructions. Actual antenna position will depend on the available mounting positions and link requirements. It may be necessary to mount the antennas 20m apart or at a certain distance from the ground to get the desired results.

### **Alignment process**

When aligning antennas deployed with a Connectorized PTP 600 Series unit it may not be possible to hear the alignment tone emanating from the unit. In this case it may be necessary for a second installer to assist in the operation. Alternatively, it may be possible to extend the tube on the supplied stethoscope to give a longer reach.

### 

Fine antenna alignment can sometimes be achieved by tightening and loosening the bolts on either side of the antenna mounting bracket, rather than trying to turn the whole bracket on the mounting pole.

### Aligning dual polar antennas

The process for aligning a dual polar antenna is the same as aligning an Integrated unit with an integrated antenna. This procedure is detailed in Using the ODU installation tones on page 5-59.

### Aligning separate antennas

When using separate antennas to achieve spatial diversity, one should be mounted with Horizontal polarization and the other with Vertical polarization. Follow Procedure 8-1

| 1  | Mount the Antennas.  |
|----|--|
| 2  | Mount the connectorized version of the PTP 600 ODU.  |
| 3  | Route and make off the ends of the Antenna cables.   |
| 4  | Connect the antenna cables at the antennas.  |
| 5  | Connect one of the antenna cables at the Connectorized version of the PTP 600 Series unit.   |
| 6  | Connect the Connectorized PTP 600 Series ODU to PIDU Plus cable and configure the unit as described in Connecting the ODU, PIDU and LPUs on page 5-43. |
| 7  | Align the connected antenna using the tones as described in Using the ODU installation tones on page 5-59.   |
| 8  | Connect the other antenna to the ODU.  |
| 9  | Disconnect the cable to the already aligned antenna.   |
| 10 | Align the second antenna using the tones as described in Using the ODU installation tones on page 5-59.  |
| 11 | Re-connect the second antenna to the Connectorized PTP 600 Series. The tone pitch should increase due to the additional received signal.               |
| 12 | Use the relevant status web pages to check that the planned link performance is achieved.  |

#### Procedure 8-1 Aligning separate antennas

### **Completing the installation**

The installation should be completed by checking all mounting nuts bolts and screws, securing all cables and weatherproofing the installation.

#### 

Finally tightening the antenna mountings may cause the antenna alignment to be altered, due to distortion in the mounting bracket caused by action of tightening. It is recommended that the installation tone be left turned on (armed) during this process so that any movement can be noticed and counteracted by tightening the other side of the bracket.

### Antenna cable fixing

Cables should be secured in place using cable ties, cleats or PVC tape. Care should be taken to ensure that no undue strain is placed on the connectors on both the Connectorized PTP 600 Series and the Antennas and also to ensure that the cables do not flap in the wind. Flapping cables are prone to damage and induce unwanted vibrations in the mast to which the units are attached.

#### Antenna connection weatherproofing

Where a cable connects to an antenna or unit from above, a drip loop should be left to ensure that water is not constantly channeled towards the connector.

Figure 8-7 Forming a drip loop



All joints should be weatherproofed using self-amalgamating tape. It is recommended that a layer of PVC tape be placed over the self-amalgamating tape to protect the joint while the self-amalgamating tape cures and gives additional protection. Figure 8-8 shows this diagrammatically for the PTP 600 Series end of the antenna cables. If the antenna manufacturer has not supplied guidance on this matter, the same technique should be employed at the antenna end of the cable.



Figure 8-8 Weatherproofing the antenna connections

## **Additional lightning protection**

The following guidelines should be applied in addition to those described in Lightning protection on page 2-18.

### **ODU mounted outdoors**

Where the ODU is mounted outdoors and is mounted some distance from the antenna, it is advisable to add additional grounding by utilizing Andrew Assemblies (such as Andrew Type 223158 <u>www.andrew.com</u>) as shown in Figure 8-9.

Figure 8-9 Additional grounding when using connectorized units



### 

Refer to instructions contained in the Andrew grounding kit for correct installation, or if instructions are missing, refer to:

http://awapps.commscope.com/catalog/product\_details.aspx?id=15832&tab=2

### **ODU mounted indoors**

Where the ODU is mounted indoors, lightning arrestors should be deployed where the antenna cables enter the building as shown in Figure 8-10.

Figure 8-10 Lightning arrestor mounting



The lighting arrestors should be ground bonded to the building ground at the point of entry. Motorola recommends Polyphaser LSXL-ME or LSXL lighting arrestors. These should be assembled as show in Figure 8-11.



#### Figure 8-11 Polyphaser assembly

•

## Chapter 9 FAQs

This chapter contains answers to frequently asked questions (FAQs) about the PTP 600.

### **General FAQs**

**Can I source and use my own PoE adaptor with the PTP 600 Series?** No. The PTP 600 Series uses a non-standard PoE configuration. Failure to use the Motorola supplied Power Indoor Unit could result in equipment damage and will invalidate the safety certification and may cause a safety hazard.

**Why has Motorola launched the PTP 600 Series?** The PTP 600 Series is the first product to feature Multiple-Input Multiple-Output (MIMO). The PTP 600 Series solutions allow wireless connections of up to 200km (124 miles) in near line-of-sight conditions and up to 10km (6 miles) in deep non-line-of-sight conditions.

What is Multiple-Input Multiple-Output (MIMO)? The PTP 600 Series radiates multiple beams from the antenna - the effect of which is to significantly protect against fading and to radically increase the probability that the receiver will decode a usable signal. When the effects of MIMO are combined with those of OFDM techniques and a best in class link budget, there is a significant improvement to the probability of a robust connection over a non-line-of-sight path.

What do you mean by "non-line-of-sight"? A wireless connection between two points without optical line-of-sight, that is, with obstructions between the antennas the transmitted signal is still able to reach the receiver and produce a good quality link.

What else is special about the PTP 600 Series ? There are many special features built-in to the hardware of the PTP 600 Series. The product offers the highest system gain in its class through high sensitivity antennas for improved signal recovery. It also features a radio system that operates on ultra fast digital signal processors but is controlled by firmware giving the ability to download new firmware when enhancements become available. The PTP 600 Series has a built-in web server for advanced management capabilities including detailed radio signal diagnosis.

**In which frequency bands does the PTP 600 Series operate?** The Motorola pointto-point 600 Series operates in the licensed bands 2.5 GHz, 4.5 GHz, 4.8 GHz and 4.9 GHz, and in the unlicensed bands 5.4 GHz (ETSI Band B), 5.8 GHz (ETSI Band C and FCC ISM band) and 5.9 GHz. Users must ensure that the PTP 600 Series complies with local operating regulations.

Why does the PTP 600 Series operate in the 5GHz band? The 5 GHz band offers the dual benefits of high data throughput and good radio propagation characteristics. The wide band of spectrum available is subdivided into several channels such that multiple systems can operate in the vicinity without causing interference to one another.

**Is the PTP 600 Series an 802.11a device?** No, although similar, the PTP 600 Series uses different encoding and radio transmission systems from 802.11a. In areas where 802.11a systems are operating, the PTP 600 Series will detect the 802.11a radio signals and choose a clear channel away from any interference.

**How much power does the PTP 600 Series transmit?** At all times the PTP 600 Series operates within country / region specific regulations for radio power emissions. In addition, the PTP 600 Series uses a technique known as Transmit Power Control (TPC) to ensure that it only transmits sufficient radio power such that the other antenna can receive a high quality signal.

How does the PTP 600 Series avoid interference from other devices nearby? At initialization, the PTP 600 Series monitors the available frequency channels to find a channel that is clear of interference. In operation 600 Series continuously monitors the spectrum to ensure it is operating on the cleanest channel.

**How does the PTP 600 Series integrate into my data network?** The PTP 600 Series acts as a transparent bridge between two segments of your network. In this sense, it can be treated like a virtual wired connection between the two buildings. The PTP 600 Series forwards 802.3 Ethernet packets destined for the other part of the network and filters packets it does not need to forward. The system is transparent to higher-level management systems such as VLANs and Spanning Tree.

**How does the PTP 600 Series provide security for data traffic?** The PTP 600 Series has a range of security features. At installation time each link must be programmed with the serial ID of its partner. The two ends of the link will only communicate with one another, eliminating any chance of "man in the middle" attacks. Over the air security is achieved through a proprietary scrambling mechanism that cannot be disabled, spoofed or snooped by commercial tools.

**Can I use Apple Macintosh OS X to control and monitor my 600 Series?** Yes, but there are some restrictions. Mozilla 1.6 or higher is recommended.

.....

## Link encryption FAQs

### Encryption data entry fields are not available

Check that the correct license key has been inserted into the unit. The current license key is displayed on the 'License Key' data entry page.

### Link fails to bridge packets after enabling link encryption

If the wireless link status on the status web page indicates that the link is 'Searching', and you can browse to the local end of the link but not to the remote end, then check that the same encryption algorithm and key have been entered at both ends of the link. Failure to enter the same algorithm and key will result in received packets not being decrypted correctly.

### Loss of AES following downgrade

When downgrading (using Recovery software image 05-01 onwards) to an earlier version of software that does not support AES, the unit will indicate that the region code is invalid. The user will be required to re-install correct software (supplied when AES key was activated) and reboot the unit.

# Glossary

| Term | Definition   |
|------|--|
| ARP  | Address Resolution Protocol                                    |
| BPSK | Binary Phase Shift Keying                                      |
| CSP  | Critical Security Parameter                                    |
| DC   | Direct Current   |
| DER  | Distinguished Encoding Rules                                   |
| DFS  | Dynamic Frequency Selection                                    |
| EIRP | Equivalent Isotropic Radiated Power                            |
| ETSI | European Telecommunications Standards Institute                |
| FAQ  | Frequently Asked Question                                      |
| FIPS | Federal Information Processing Standard                        |
| GPS  | Global Positioning System                                      |
| HTTP | Hypertext Transfer Protocol                                    |
| ID   | Identity   |
| IEEE | Institute of Electrical and Electronic Engineers               |
| IP   | Internet Protocol  |
| IQ   | In phase / Quadrature  |
| ISM  | Industrial Scientific and Medical                              |
| ITU  | International Telecommunications Union                         |
| LAN  | Local Area Network   |
| LOS  | Line-of-Sight (clear line-of-sight, and Fresnel zone is clear) |
| LPU  | Lightning Protection Unit                                      |
| MAC  | Medium Access Control Layer                                    |

| Term      | Definition                              |
|-----------|---|
| MDI       | Medium Dependent Interface              |
| MDIX      | Medium Dependent Interface Crossover    |
| NLOS      | Non-Line-of-Sight                       |
| ODU       | Outdoor Unit                            |
| OFDM      | Orthogonal Frequency Division Multiplex |
| PC        | IBM Compatible Personal Compute         |
| PIDU Plus | Power Indoor Unit Plus                  |
| PING      | Packet Internet Groper                  |
| PTP       | Point-to-Point                          |
| QAM       | Quadrature Amplitude Modulation         |
| RAM       | Random Access Memory                    |
| RF        | Radio Frequency                         |
| RSSI      | Received Signal Strength Indication     |
| SMTP      | Simple Mail Transport Protocol          |
| SNMP      | Simple Network Management Protocol      |
| SNTP      | Simple Network Time Protocol            |
| STP       | Shielded Twisted Pair                   |
| STP       | Spanning Tree Protocol                  |
| TCP       | Transmission Control Protocol           |
| TLS       | Transport Layer Security                |
| TPC       | Transmit Power Control                  |
| URL       | Universal Resource Location             |
| USA       | United States of America                |
| UTP       | Unshielded Twisted Pair                 |
| UV        | Ultraviolet                             |
| VLAN      | Virtual Local Area Network              |

## Index

1

1000 BaseT not achieved, 7-9

Α

Access key, 6-79 Adaptive modulation description, 1-22 Adaptive Modulation, 2-10 **AES** encryption enabling, 6-96 license, 1-48 Alarm, 6-7, 6-8 Alarms, 6-6 diagnostic, 6-114 supported, 1-41 system alarms, 6-7 Alignment, 5-59, 8-16 Antenna, 8-2, 8-6, 8-13, 8-16, 8-17 Antenna Restrictions PTP 54600, 4-64 PTP 58600, 4-85

#### B

Balun, 5-56 Band Edge Power Reduction, 4-82 Bandwidth, 2-5 Brackets, 1-7

#### С

Cable Preparation, 5-8

#### phn-0896\_009v003

Feb 2010

Routing, 5-45 Cable glands connecting to ODU or LPU, 5-16 disconnecting, 5-18 Cable Loss, 8-6 Connectorized Variant, 8-12 Cables, 1-15, 5-8, 5-39, 5-40, 8-14 for Antennas, 8-18 Capability summary, 6-77 channel bandwidth and OFDM, 1-22 Channel Bandwidth, 2-5 channels, 6-34 Channels, 6-22 Barring, 6-28 History, 6-30 Clock, 6-118 Compliance, 4-2, 4-7, 4-9 Conditions of Use, 3-3 Configuration, 1-38, 6-48, 7-21 confirmation of, 6-69 Connectorized Variant, 8-3 erasing, 7-25 Ethernet, 6-48 interface, 6-55 manual, 6-52 saving and restoring, 6-81 Spectrum Management, 6-27 Telecoms, 6-49 web pages, 6-19 wireless, 6-59 Connecting, 8-19 at ODU, 5-43, 5-44 at PIDU, 5-46 PIDU to ODU, 5-43 to network, 5-3, 5-59

#### UNDER DEVELOPMENT

Connections cables, 5-8 Connectorized Variant, 8-1 Connectors, 8-14 Counters data port, 6-121 detailed counters page, 6-124 management port, 6-121 CSPs zeroising, 6-111

#### D

Data Rates, 4-99 Deployment, 1-3 Connectorized Variant, 8-9 Description Connectorized Variant, 8-2 of PTP 600, 1-1 diagnostics, 6-18, 6-130 Diagnostics, 6-114 download, 6-130 plotting, 6-128 Dimensions, 4-6 Disarm, 6-72 Disarm ODU, 5-63, 6-74 Disclaimer, 3-6 Drop cable definition of, 1-15 grounding, 5-11 resistance testing, 7-12

#### Е

E1 installation, 5-50 E1/T1 configuration, 6-57 Mast or Tower, 2-30 Wall Installation, 2-31 E1/T1 links Telecoms Circuits, 1-36 Eire, 4-4 EIRP, 8-7 Email alerts and events, 1-47 SMTP, 6-116 Emissions PTP 25600, 4-20 PTP 45600, 4-28 PTP 48600, 4-38 PTP 49600, 4-48 PTP 54600, 4-59 PTP 58600, 4-78

Encryption key, 6-104 Entropy input, 6-103 Environmental, 4-15 Ethernet, 6-43, 6-44, 6-121 activity, 7-9 Configuration, 6-48, 7-23 frames, 1-33 LED did not flash, 7-7 packet errors, 7-10 Port. 1-10 Specifications, 4-5 Ethernet bridging description, 1-33 Ethernet Connection, 1-7 Ethernet frames, 6-39 Ethernet LED, 1-9 ETSI, 4-2 **EU** Notification PTP 54600, 4-57 PTP 58600, 4-75

#### F

Factory settings, 6-51 FAQs General, 9-1 Wireless Link, 9-4 Fault Finding, 7-1 Fault management, 6-112 FCC, 4-2 FCC Notification PTP 25600, 4-18 PTP 49600, 4-46 PTP 54600, 4-55 PTP 58600, 4-74 FIPS encryption, 1-32 file names, 6-87 FIPS 140-2 configuring, 6-108 description, 1-52 symbol, 1-53 Fixed Frequency, 6-32 Frequencies, 1-4 Frequency Variants, 1-5

#### G

Glossary, I GPS and timing reference, 1-26, 1-29 installing Trimble, 5-28 installing UltraSync, 5-1, 5-23

phn-0896\_009v003

#### UNDER DEVELOPMENT

Feb 2010

mounting options, 2-36 on building, 2-36 on mast, 2-37 protection of, 2-36 PTP-SYNC, 1-27 testing UltraSync, 7-16 UltraSync, 1-27 GPS Sync Unit, 2-32, 2-33, 2-34, 2-35 Graphical installation, 6-75 Grounding considerations, 2-20 of drop cable, 5-11 of GPS receiver, 5-35 of the installation, 5-46

#### Н

Histogram, 6-18 Hoist, 5-19 Home page, 6-4 HTTP, 6-95 settings, 6-105 HTTPS/TLS configuring, 6-98

#### Ι

**IC** Notification PTP 49600, 4-46 PTP 54600, 4-55 PTP 58600, 4-74 i-DFS description, 1-24 Immunity, 4-9 Installation, 5-1 Connectorized Variant, 8-5 Connectorized Variant, 8-14 Connectorized Variant, 8-18 current summary, 6-54 E1/T1, 5-57 graphical, 6-75 LPU, 2-21 Wiring for LPU, 2-24 Installation Pages, 6-51 Interference, 4-3 IP configuration, 7-23 IP traffic and link mode optimization, 1-20

Key of keys, 6-100

#### L

K

LAN configuration, 6-42 Lateral Force, 2-7 LED Ethernet, 7-7 power, 7-5, 7-7 LEDs, 1-9 Remote, 1-14 Legal Notices, 3-1 Legal Disclaimer, 5-1 Liability, 3-13 license, 1-4 License Agreement, 3-2 License key, 6-77, 6-79 downgrade, 1-46 entering, 6-80 Licenses, 2-3 PTP 25600, 4-17 PTP 45600, 4-26 PTP 48600, 4-36 PTP 49600, 4-45 PTP 54600, 4-54 PTP 58600, 4-70 PTP 59600, 4-91 Lightning, 1-1, 1-18 Lightning protection and E1/T1, 5-57 test after a strike, 7-19 Lightning Protection, 2-18 Connectorized Variant, 8-20 PTP and, 1-18 Lightning Protection Unit (LPU) Fitting, 5-45 Limits, 4-3 Link Budget Connectorized Variant, 8-9 Link Loss, 2-17 PTP 25600, 4-24 PTP 45600, 4-33 PTP 48600, 4-43 PTP 49600, 4-51 PTP 54600, 4-62 PTP 58600, 4-83

phn-0896\_009v003
PTP 59600, 4-97 Link mode optimization description, 1-20 Link symmetry description, 1-21 LINKPlanner, 2-9 for synchronized networks, 2-12 LPU Configurations, 2-26 connecting, 5-43 kit options, 2-22

# Μ

MAC Address, 7-22 Management, 1-34, 1-38 of faults, 6-112 of performance, 6-119 Mast Installation, 2-28, 2-30 Master and Slave, 6-28 Measurements, 6-22 Menu bar, 6-2 **Metrics** Viewing, 6-31 MIBs supported, 6-113 MIMO description, 1-23 Modulation, 2-10 Mounting, 1-7 Connectorized Variant, 8-15 PIDU, 5-48

# Ν

Network, 1-7 connecting the PIDU, 5-3, 5-59 Networking, 1-35 Networks planning, 2-12

# 0

Obstacles, 2-9 ODU alignment, 5-59 connecting, 5-43 disarming, 5-63, 6-72 mounting, 5-19 rebooting, 6-132, 7-27 OfCom, 4-4 OFDM and channel bandwidth, 1-22 Outdoor Unit (ODU) Description, 1-6 Site Selection, 2-6 Output Power, 2-17

# P

packet errors, 7-10 Password, 6-94 Path Loss, 2-10 Performance management, 6-119 PIDU connecting, 5-43 Description, 1-9 Site Selection, 2-6 Ping packets, 7-11 Planning, 2-1 of the PTP Link, 2-9 Power adjust transmit power, 5-62 Alternative Configurations, 1-11 LED is off, 7-5 PTP 25600, 4-24 PTP 45600, 4-33 PTP 48600, 4-43 PTP 49600, 4-51 PTP 54600, 4-62 PTP 58600, 4-83 PTP 59600, 4-97 Supply, 1-10 testing for E1 and T1, 5-58 Power compliance margins, 4-12 Power density calculation, 4-11 Power LED, 1-9 Power Output, 2-17 Power Supply, 4-6 Pre-installation checks, 5-7 Priorities, 6-39 Private key, 6-101 Properties, 6-131 PTP 25600 Information, 4-16 Spectrum Management, 6-38 PTP 45600 Information, 4-26 PTP 48600 Information, 4-35 PTP 49600 Information, 4-45 PTP 54600 Information, 4-53

PTP 58600 Information, 4-67 PTP 59600 Information, 4-90 PTP LINKPlanner, 2-9 PTP-SYNC fault finding, 5-41 front panel, 1-31 installing, 5-36 Public certificate, 6-101

#### Q

QoS configuration, 6-39 Questions, 9-4

#### R

Radar Avoidance, 6-34 Radar avoidance, 1-24 radio, 4-2, 4-3, 4-68 Radio, 7-17 **Radio Certifications** PTP 25600, 4-20 PTP 45600, 4-28 PTP 48600, 4-38 PTP 49600, 4-48 PTP 54600, 4-59 PTP 58600, 4-78 Radio link starting up, 5-59 **Radio Specifications** PTP 25600, 4-19 PTP 45600, 4-27 PTP 48600, 4-37 PTP 49600, 4-47 PTP 54600, 4-58 PTP 58600, 4-77 PTP 59600, 4-92 Random number, 6-103 Range, 2-9 Range Adjustment, 4-113 Reboot, 6-132, 7-22, 7-27 Rebooting verification, 6-44 Recovery, 7-20 Recovery mode description, 1-50 **Recovery Switch** 

Remote, 1-14 Reference Information, 4-1 Region Codes, 2-3 PTP 25600, 4-17 PTP 45600, 4-26 PTP 48600, 4-36 PTP 49600, 4-45 PTP 54600, 4-54 PTP 58600, 4-70 PTP 59600, 4-91 Regulations, 4-2 Connectorized Variant, 8-10 Examples, 4-3 Regulatory Notices, 3-1 **Regulatory Compliance** PTP 25600, 4-18 PTP 49600, 4-46 PTP 54600, 4-55 PTP 58600, 4-74 PTP 59600, 4-92 **Regulatory** Limits PTP 25600, 4-16 PTP 45600, 4-26 PTP 48600, 4-35 PTP 49600, 4-45 PTP 54600, 4-53 PTP 58600, 4-67 PTP 59600, 4-90 **Regulatory Notices**, 4-1 Reset, 7-21 Resetting configuration, 7-23 Resistances E1/T1, 5-58 RJ45, 7-12 Restore configuration, 6-83 RJ45 color coding for E1 and T1, 5-50 testing, 7-12 **RI45** Cable Dressing, 5-48 Rolling sphere method, 2-20 RTTT, 2-4

### S

Safety Loop, 5-19 Save configuration, 6-81 Screens, 6-1 Security

phn-0896\_009v003

Feb 2010

UNDER DEVELOPMENT

commit configuration, 6-107 critical parameters, 6-111 critical security parameters, 1-49 encryption, 1-32 hardware, 1-53 management procedures, 6-90 security wizard, 1-39 setting the banner, 6-102 SNMPv3, 1-42 transport layer, 1-39 Sites Selection, 2-6 SMTP, 6-116 SNMP, 6-115 description, 1-40 SNMPv3 description, 1-42 SNTP, 6-117 Software, 7-22 Connectorized Variant, 8-3 upgrading, 7-22 Specifications, 4-1 of the system, 4-5 Spectrum management, 6-22 Spectrum Management, 8-6 Master and Slave, 6-24 Spectrum Planning, 2-1, 2-2 **Spectrum Settings** PTP 25600, 4-21 PTP 45600, 4-29 PTP 48600, 4-39 PTP 49600, 4-49 PTP 54600, 4-60 PTP 58600, 4-80 PTP 59600, 4-93 Standards for RF equipment, 4-10 Statistics, 6-119 Status page, 6-10 Status Page Connectorized Variant, 8-3 Surge, 1-1, 1-18, 5-45 System Administration password, 6-94 System administration pages, 6-18 System summary, 6-4

### Т

T1 installation, 5-50 TDD synchronization configuration, 6-66

options, 2-12 planning networks, 2-12 status, 6-16 TDM traffic and link mode optimization, 1-21 Telecoms, 1-36, 4-7, 6-49 E1 and T1, 5-50 Telecoms interface, 6-57 Telnet, 6-95 settings, 6-105 Testing Hardware, 7-2 radio link. 7-17 TFTP software upgrades, 6-88 Third Party Software, 3-8 Threshold PTP 25600, 4-24 PTP 45600, 4-33 PTP 48600, 4-43 PTP 49600, 4-51 PTP 54600, 4-62 PTP 58600, 4-83 PTP 59600, 4-97 Thresholds, 2-17 Throughput, 4-33, 4-43, 4-51, 4-99 Time division duplex configuring the TDD frame, 1-26 synchronization, 1-25 synchronization performance, 1-27 Time division duplex (TDD) description, 1-19 Timing reference and GPS, 1-26, 1-29 Tools, 5-7, 8-14 Tower Installation, 2-28, 2-30 Traffic classes, 6-39 Transmit power, 5-62 Transmit Power Reduction, 4-82 Troubleshooting, 7-1

#### U

Upgrade, 7-21 Upgrades capacity, 1-49 procedures for, 6-77 remotely via TFTP, 6-88 software, 1-50, 7-22 Upgrading software, 6-84 User accounts configuring, 6-90 identity-based, 1-39, 6-93 passwords, 1-40 User Interface, 6-1

#### V

Variants, 1-5 VLAN, 6-45

#### W

Wall Installation, 2-29 Warning, 6-8, 6-9 Weather, 2-8 Weatherproofing, 8-19 Web interface, 6-2 Web Pages, 6-1 Webpage properties, 6-131 Weight, 4-6 Wind Loading, 2-7 Wireless settings, 6-59

# Z

Zones, 2-19